

Owner's Manual

2017 TT Coupe

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

8S0012721BB

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 5

Cockpit 6
Cockpit overview 6
Controls at a glance 6

Instruments and indicator lights 8
Instruments 8
Indicator lights 9
On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD) 17

Driver information system 19
Overview 19
Multifunction steering wheel plus 20
Multifunction steering wheel 22
Tachometer 23
Odometer 23
On-board computer 23
Sport view 24

Starting and driving 25
Opening and closing 25
Central locking 25
Luggage compartment lid 30
Power window 32
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 33

Lights and Vision 36
Exterior lighting 36
Interior lighting 38
Vision 39
Windshield wipers 41
Digital compass 43

Seats and storage 44
General information 44
Front seats 44
Rear bench seat 45
Ashtray 46
Cigarette lighter and socket 46
Storage 47
Luggage compartment 48

Warm and cold 51
Climate control system 51

Driving 55
General information 55
Steering 57
Starting and stopping the engine 57
Electromechanical parking brake 60
Starting from a stop 61
Automatic transmission 61
Trailer towing 69

Driver assistance 70
Assist 70
Electronic speed limiter 70
Speed warning system 70
Cruise control system 70
Audi active lane assist 72
Lap timer 74
Audi side assist 76
Audi drive select (drive settings) 79

Parking systems 82
General information 82
Rear parking system 83
Parking system plus 83
Rearview camera 84
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 86
Error messages 86

Intelligent Technology 88
Electronic stabilization control (ESC) 88
Brakes 89
Electromechanical steering 91
All wheel drive (quattro) 91
Rear spoiler 92
Energy management 93
Information about data recorded by vehicle control modules 94

Infotainment system 96
Multi Media Interface 96
Traffic safety information 96
Introduction 96
MMI On/Off knob with joystick function .. 96
MMI operation 97
MMI touch 98

Operating ... 101
Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob ... 102
Letter/number speller ... 102
Free text search ... 104
Menus and Symbols ... 105

Voice recognition system ... 108
Operating ... 107
Command overview information ... 108
Commands ... 109

Telephone ... 114
Introduction ... 114
Setup ... 114
Using the telephone ... 116
Favorites ... 119
Messages ... 119
Listening to voicemail ... 121
Emergency call functions ... 122
Directory ... 122
Settings ... 124
Troubleshooting ... 125

Audi connect ... 126
Introduction ... 126
Setup ... 126
Configuration through myAudi ... 127
Audi connect services ... 128
Wi-Fi hotspot ... 130
Configuring the data connection ... 131
About Audi connect ... 132
Troubleshooting ... 134

Navigation ... 135
Opening navigation ... 135
Entering a destination ... 136
Cancel route guidance ... 140
Home address ... 141
Favorites ... 141
Directory contacts ... 141
Additional settings ... 141
Map ... 143
Online map display ... 146
Accessing traffic information ... 147
Troubleshooting ... 149

Radio ... 150
Opening the radio ... 150
Radio functions ... 151
Radio menu ... 152
Favorites ... 152
Additional settings ... 153
Troubleshooting ... 154

Media ... 155
Introduction ... 155
Notes ... 155
Media drives ... 156
Bluetooth audio player ... 158
Wi-Fi audio player ... 159
Online media and Internet radio ... 160
Multimedia connections ... 161
Playing media ... 163
Additional settings ... 166
Supported media and file formats ... 168
Troubleshooting ... 170

Audi smartphone interface ... 172
Setup ... 172
Operating ... 172
Troubleshooting ... 173

System settings ... 174
Setting the date and time ... 174
MMI settings ... 174
Connection manager ... 175
System update ... 177
Sound settings ... 178
Volume settings ... 178
Restarting the MMI (Reset) ... 179
Software license information ... 179

Safety ... 180
Safe driving ... 180
Basics ... 180
Correct passenger seating positions ... 181
Driver and passenger side footwell ... 184
Pedal area ... 184
Stowing luggage ... 185
Reporting Safety Defects ... 187

Safety belts ... 189
General notes ... 189
Why safety belts? ... 190

8S0012721BB

Safety belts 193
Safety belt tensioner 195

Airbag system 197
Important information 197
Front airbags 201
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 209
Knee airbags 213
Side airbags 215
Side curtain airbags 218

Child safety 221
Important information 221
Child seats 227
Securing child seats 232
LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children) 235
Additional information 239

Maintenance and Care 240
Checking and Filling 240
Fuel 240
Refueling 241
Engine compartment 244
Engine oil 246
Cooling system 250
Brake fluid 251
Battery 252
Windshield washer system 253
Service interval display 254

Wheels 255
Wheels and Tires 255
Tire pressure monitoring system 272

Care and cleaning 275
General information 275
Car washes 275
Cleaning and care information 276
Placing your vehicle out of service 279

Troubleshooting 281
Emergency assistance 281
General information 281
Equipment 281
Tire mobility kit 281
Replacing wheels 283
Spare tire 287

Fuses and bulbs 289
Electrical fuses 289
Bulbs 291

Emergency situations 292
General 292
Starting by pushing or towing 292
Starting with jumper cables 292
Use of jumper cables 293
Towing with a tow truck 294
Raising the vehicle 296

Accessories and technical data . . 298
Technical data 298
Vehicle specifications 298
Weights 298
Dimensions 299
Capacities 299
Gasoline engines 300

Consumer information and technical data 301
Consumer information 301
Warranty coverages 301
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 301
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 301
Maintenance 301
Accessories and technical changes 303

Index 305

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It manual contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to: vehicles with BiXenon headlights”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** are designed as a general guide and on your vehicle may look slightly different than what is illustrated.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING”within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

8S0012721BB

Cockpit overview

Controls at a glance

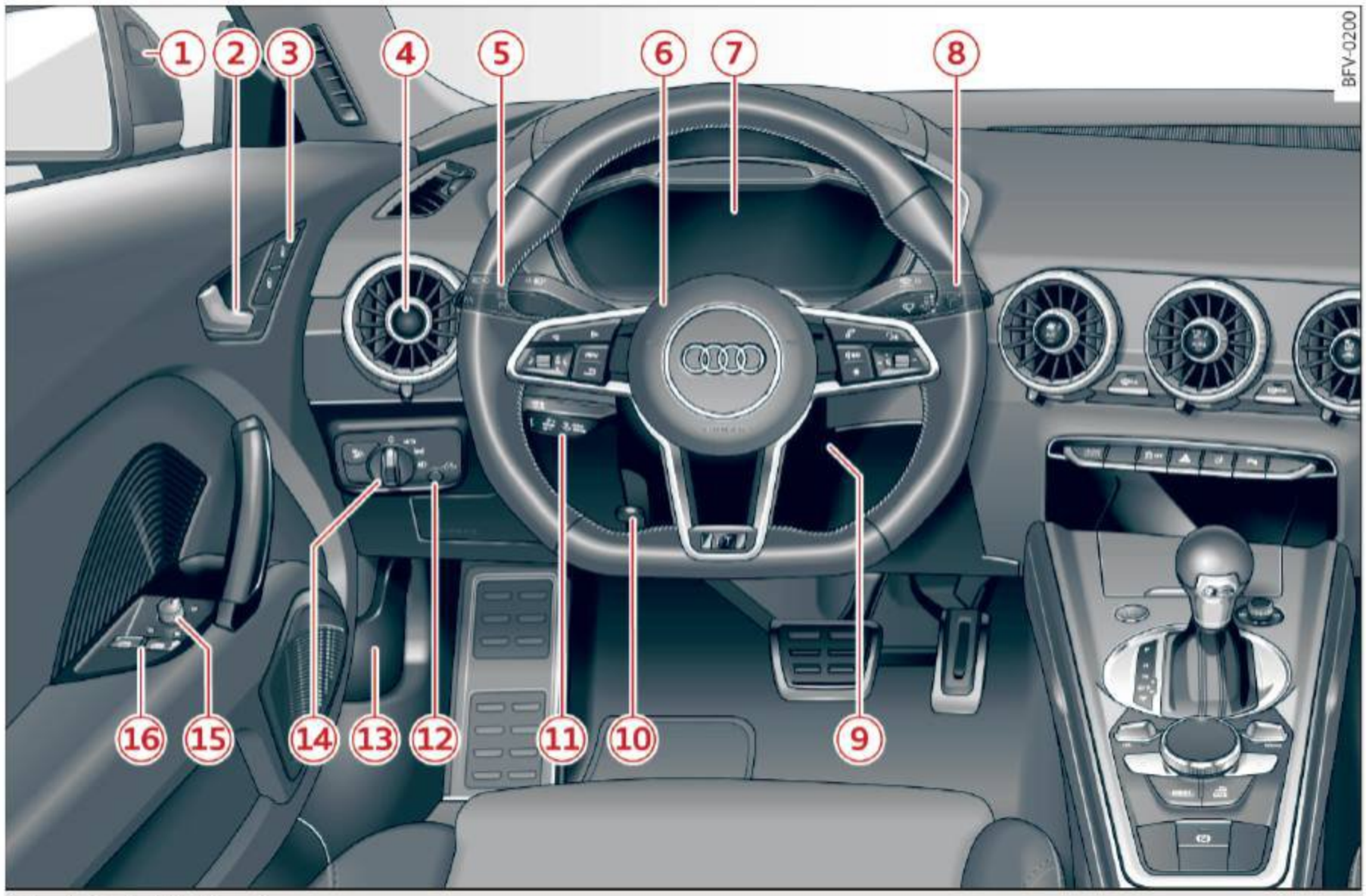


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

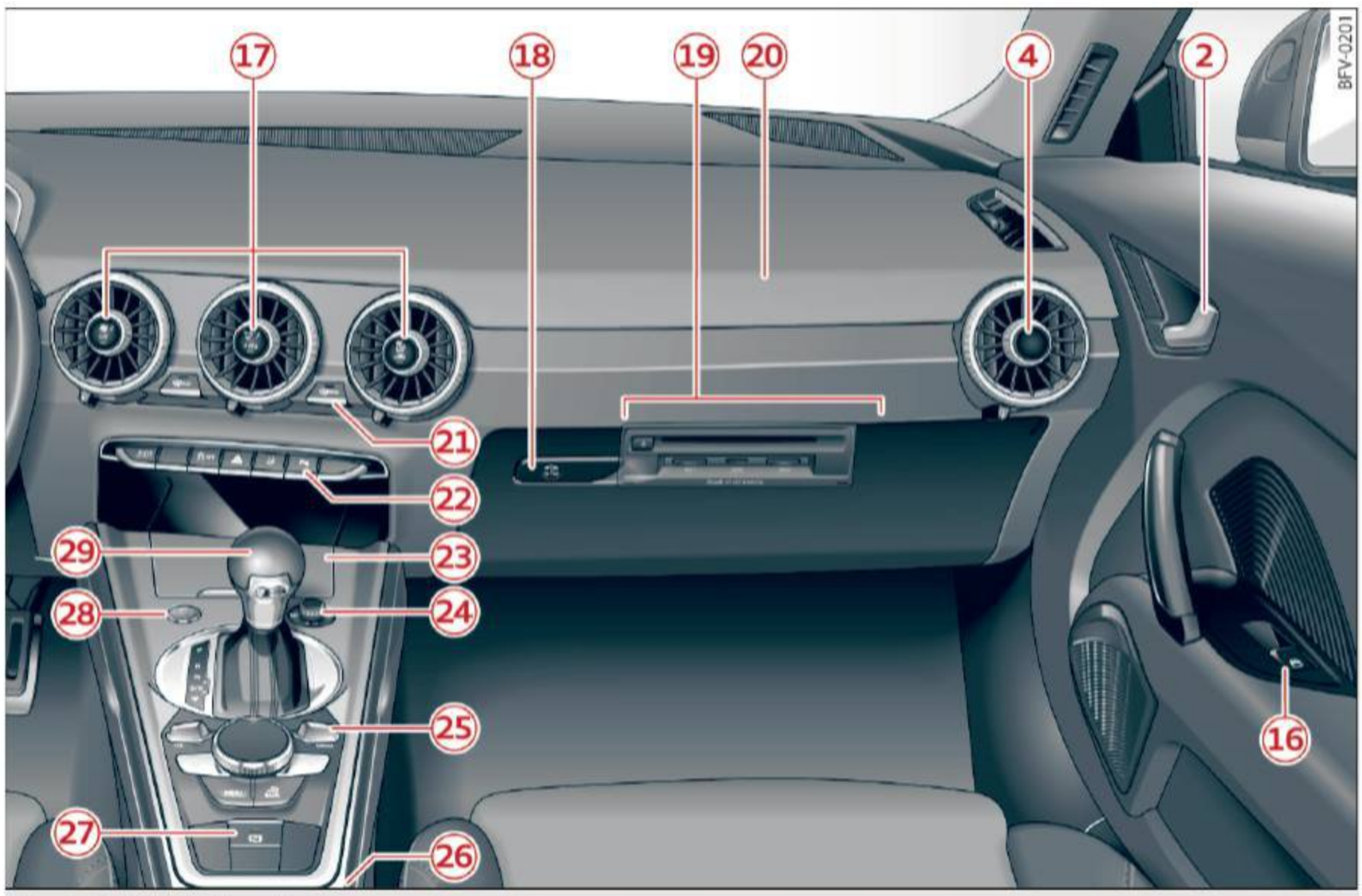


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Side assist display 76
② Door handle
③ Central locking switch 29
④ Air vent with seat heating controls
⑤ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams . . . 37
– Active lane assist 72
⑥ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 201
– Controls for the virtual instrument cluster including the driver information system, audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition system
– Shift paddles 66
⑦ Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 8
⑧ Windshield washer system lever . 41
⑨ Starting the engine if there is a malfunction 59
⑩ Adjustable steering column 57
⑪ Cruise control lever 70
⑫ Instrument illumination 39
⑬ Hood release 244
⑭ Headlight control switch 36
⑮ Power exterior mirror adjustment 39
⑯ Power windows 32
⑰ Air vent including climate control system controls 51
⑱ Lockable glove compartment
⑲ Drives for CD, DVD, SIM/SD cards 156
⑳ Front passenger's airbag 201
㉑ Rear window defogger button
㉒ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– drive select 79
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 88
– Emergency flashers 38
– Retractable rear spoiler 92
㉓ Depending on equipment, center console with:
– Multimedia compartment for cell phone 161
㉔ Infotainment system on/off button 96
㉕ Infotainment system unit 96
㉖ Depending on equipment:
– Storage compartment
– Ashtray 46
– Cup holder 47
㉗ Parking brake 60
㉘ START ENGINE STOP button . . . 57
㉙ Selector lever (S tronic) 62

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

8S0012721BB

Instruments and indicator lights

Instruments

Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster)

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

① Engine coolant temperature 8
② Driver information system 19
③ Fuel level 8
④ Trip odometer reset knob 23

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ⇨ *page 8, fig. 3* ① only functions when the ignition is switched on. To prevent engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs in the left area of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the Infotainment system display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 12*.

Note

- Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the cooling-air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
- The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Fuel level

The indicator ③ only functions when the ignition is switched on. If the fuel level drops below 1.9 gal (7 L), a red LED will light up and the indicator light will turn on ⇨ *page 16*. The LED blinks red when the fuel level is very low.

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the **Technical Data** section ⇨ *page 299*. ▶

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages in the display can be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the tab for the indicator lights and messages using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 19*. If there are several malfunctions, you can display them one at a time using the thumbwheel.

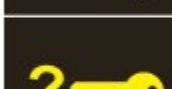
Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights	
BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 10*
(!)	**Canada models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 10*
PARK	**USA models:** electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
(P)	**Canada models:** electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 12*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 12*
	Alternator ⇨ *page 13*
	Engine stop while driving ⇨ *page 13*
	Safety belt ⇨ *page 13* ⇨ *page 13*
!	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 91*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 13*
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 14*
	Transmission malfunction ⇨ *page 68*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 92*

Yellow indicator lights	
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
ABS	**USA models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
(ABS)	**Canada models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 15*
BRAKE WEAR	**USA models:** Brake pads ⇨ *page 15*
	Canada models: Brake pads ⇨ *page 15*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
(!)	Tire pressure monitoring system ✓ ⇨ *page 273*
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system ⇨ *page 273*

	Engine control ⇨ *page 15*
	Emissions control system ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 16*
	Battery charge ⇨ *page 13*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 16*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 16*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 16*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 58*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 27*
	Bulb failure indicator* ⇨ *page 16*
	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 17*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 17*
	Light/rain sensor* ⇨ *page 17*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 68*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 13*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 14*
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 14*
	Electromechanical steering✓ ⇨ *page 91*
	Adaptive dampers* ⇨ *page 17*

	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 92*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 17*
	Rear safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
	**USA models:** cruise control system* ⇨ *page 70*
	**Canada models:** cruise control system* ⇨ *page 70*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 73*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 59*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 73*
	Audi side assist* ⇨ *page 78*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 68*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
	Rear safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
	Rear safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
	**USA models:** speed warning system* ⇨ *page 70*
	**Canada models:** speed warning system* ⇨ *page 70*
	High beams ⇨ *page 37*

BRAKE / Brake system

If this indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system. ▶

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Warning! No brake booster

If brake assist (brake booster) is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Brakes: malfunction! Stop vehicle safely

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models), the ESC indicator light , and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, then the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are malfunctioning ⇨ ⚠.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. Please contact Service

- If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
- If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

(USA models): if the BRAKE and indicator lights turn on together, have the brake system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ *page 15*.

There is also a warning tone when the lights turn on.

⚠ WARNING

- Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 244, Working in the engine compartment* before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid level.
- If the brake system indicator light does not turn off or it turns on while driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, and this increases the risk of an accident. Stop the vehicle and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may be malfunctioning. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected.

PARK/(P)/(P) Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light turns on, the parking brake was set.

PARK (USA models) / (Canada models) Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

PARK (USA models) / (Canada models) Please press brake pedal to release parking brake ▶

8S0012721BB

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the (P) button at the same time, or start driving with hill start assist ⇨ *page 61, Starting from a stop*.

Parking brake: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) Please release parking brake.

Release the parking brake if this message appears.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) Parking brake auto release unavailable

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake.

PARK BRAKEUSA models) / (P) (Canada models) Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) Parking brake is applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake if necessary.

Tips

For additional information on the parking brake, see ⇨ *page 60*.

Cooling system

Turn off engine and check coolant level

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 250*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 250*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. Wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 244, Working in the engine compartment*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on as this increases the risk of engine damage.

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine. Oil pressure too low

Stop the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 248*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 248*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off. ▶

– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still blinks, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Generator/vehicle battery

Electric system: malfunction! Battery is not being charged

There is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electrical system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment because it will drain the battery. See your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction.

Engine stop while driving

Engine stopped: no power steering or brake servo possible

There is a malfunction in the engine or in the fuel supply system.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Front safety belt

The indicator light stays on until the driver's and front passenger's* safety belts are fastened. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, see ⇨ *page 189*.

Rear safety belt

Applies to: vehicles with rear safety belt detection

The respective indicator light will turn on briefly when a safety belt on the rear seats is fastened or unfastened.

- If this indicator light turns on briefly, the safety belt on the rear seat is not fastened.

- If this indicator light turns on briefly, the safety belt on the rear seat was fastened.

- If this indicator light blinks, the safety belt was unfastened while driving. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, see ⇨ *page 189*.

Steering lock

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. ▶

Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

Central indicator light

If the or indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

Engine start system

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Electronic stabilization control (ESC) and anti-lock braking system (ABS)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Reduced stability

If the indicator light turns on, ESC sport mode was switched on using the OFF button ⇨ *page 89*. You can turn the ESC on again by press the OFF button again.

Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Reduced stability

If the indicator light turns on, the ESC was restricted or switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 89*. The message **ESC OFF** also appears. You can turn the ESC on again by press the OFF button again.

The system switches on when the ignition is switched on. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

Stabilization control (ESC): malfunction! See owner's manual

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

ABS: malfunction! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the ABS system or electronic differential lock. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the ▶

nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, see ⇨ *page 88*.

Brake pads

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

The brake pads are worn.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the brake pads checked.

Applies to: USA models

The indicator light turns on together with the BRAKE indicator light

Safety systems

The indicator light monitors the safety systems.

Safety system

If the indicator light turns on or blinks, there is a malfunction in a safety system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during a collision, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Engine control

If the indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine control.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL)

The malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) is part of the On Board Diagnostic system (OBD II). The symbol turns on when the ignition is switched on and turns off again once the engine is started and running at a steady idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is functioning correctly.

The indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 17*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

maximum engine speed: XXXX rpm

The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed displayed in the driver information system. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine oil level (min.)

Please check oil level

You may continue driving for the time being. Check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 246*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 248*.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, drive at low engine speed to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor to check the engine oil level has failed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Oil level sensor: oil change necessary. Please contact Service

The engine oil level is too high.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

Refer to the description in the Owner's Manual ⇨ *page 248, Checking the engine oil level and adding engine oil*.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 1.9 gal (7 L) of fuel left in the tank.

Please refuel immediately

If the indicator light turns on the message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Refuel the vehicle immediately.

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the tank system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

For the sake of the environment

Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.

Tips

More information on refueling is available on page ⇨ *page 241*.

Washer fluid level

Please add washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 253*.

Windshield wipers

Windshield wipers: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction with the windshield wipers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Bulb failure indicator

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

Replace the bulb immediately.

Vehicle lights: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- Light bulbs are under pressure and can explode when bulbs are replaced, which increases the risk of injury.
- With gas-discharge lamps* (xenon headlights), the high-voltage component must be handled appropriately. Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury.

Headlight range control system

Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the adaptive lights. The headlights still function.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. You can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all wiper functions that are independent of the rain sensor.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Adaptive dampers

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Suspension: malfunction! You may continue driving

There is an adaptive damper malfunction.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Turn signals

If the ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light blinks, a turn signal is turned on. If both indicator lights are blinking, the emergency flashers are on.

On-Board Diagnostic system (OBD)

Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL)

The malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster is part of the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II).

The warning/indicator light turns on when the ignition is switched on and turns off once the engine is started and is running in idle at a stable speed. This indicates that the MIL is functioning correctly.

If the light does not turn off after starting the engine or turns on while driving, this may indicate there is a malfunction in the engine. If the indicator turns on, the catalytic converter may be damaged.

Drive **with reduced engine performance** (avoid high speeds for extended periods of time and/or fast acceleration) and have the malfunction corrected. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

The indicator may turn on if the electronic speed limiter is faulty. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 70, Electronic speed limiter*.

On-Board Diagnostics



Fig. 4 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 4*.

Your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

WARNING

Do not use the diagnostic connector for personal use. Incorrect usage can cause malfunctions, which can increase the risk of a collision!

Driver information system

Overview

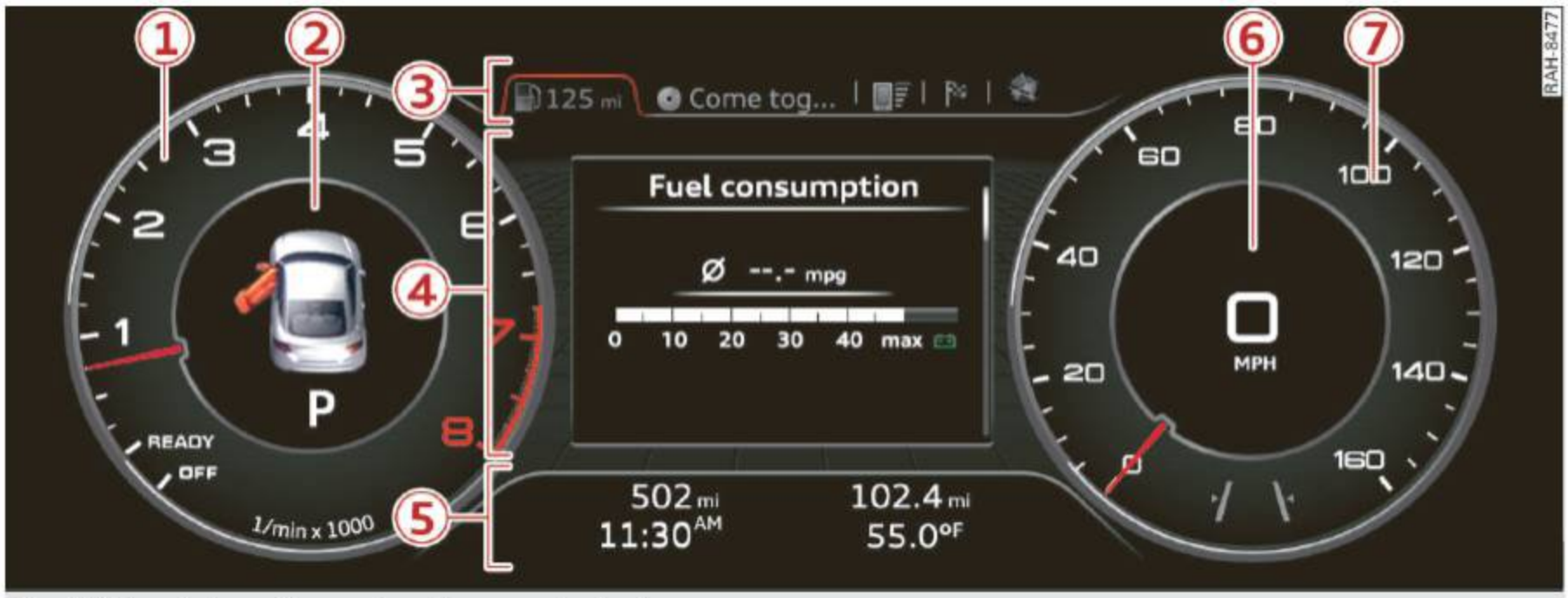


Fig. 5 Driver information system diagram: classic view

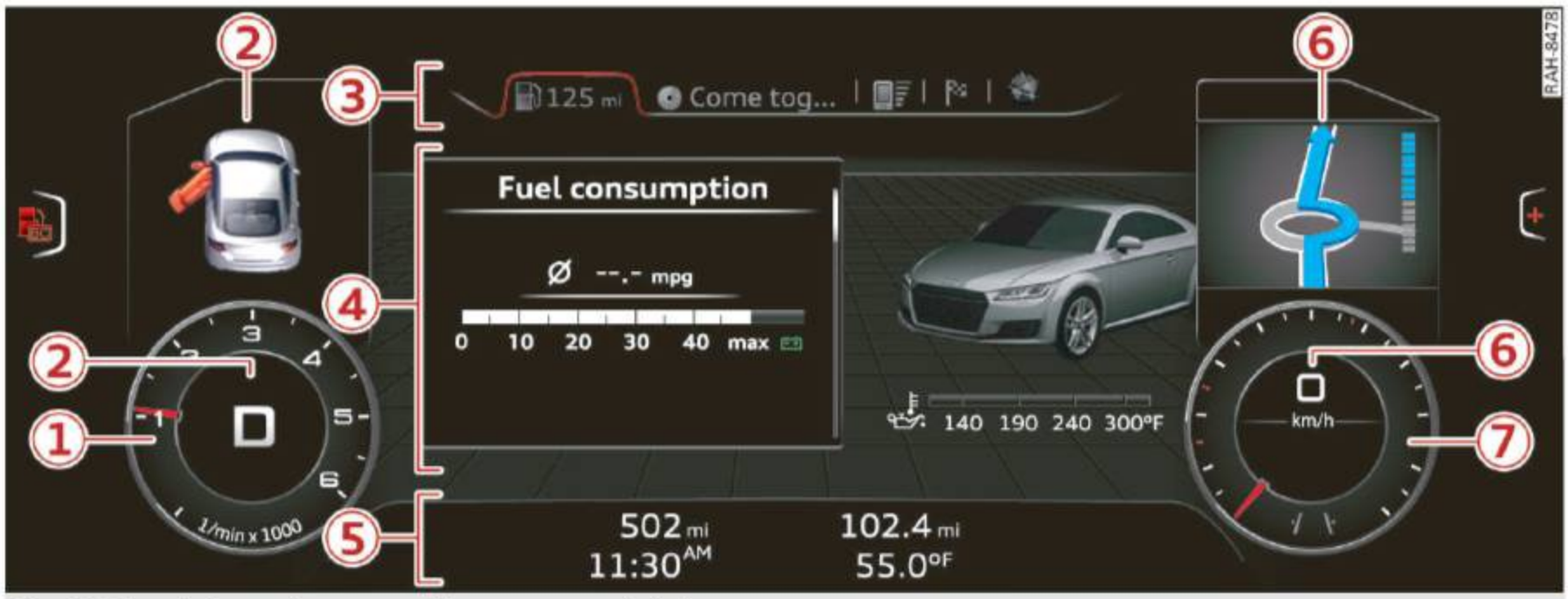


Fig. 6 Driver information system diagram: expanded view

The driver information system displays various items:

① Tachometer
② Left additional display (divided in two sections in the expanded view)
③ Tab area
④ Central area
⑤ Status line (displayed on one or two lines)
⑥ Speedometer/right additional display (divided in two sections in the enhanced view)
⑦ Speedometer/convenience display

In certain models, you can switch to a sport view of the driver information system when the vehicle is stationary ⇨ *page 24*.

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Tips

– You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system. ▶

– If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to the heat radiating from the engine.
– At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

Multifunction steering wheel plus

Operating

Apples to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel plus

The Multifunction steering wheel plus has 14 buttons. You can use them to operate the driver information system and the MMI functions, change the volume and switch the voice recognition system* on and off.*



Fig. 7 Infotainment system display

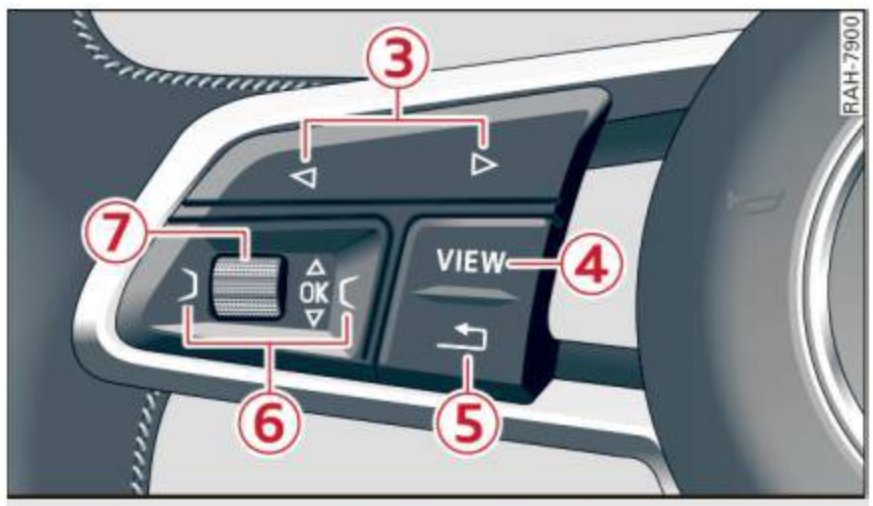


Fig. 8 Multifunction steering wheel, left side

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① that display various information ②.

The following tabs are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle
Second tab [a]	Warnings
Third tab	Radio ⇨ *page 150* Media ⇨ *page 155*
Fourth tab	Telephone* ⇨ *page 114*
Fifth tab	Navigation* ⇨ *page 135* Map* ⇨ *page 143*
Sixth tab [b]	Sound ⇨ *page 174* Audi connect* ⇨ *page 126* Settings ⇨ *page 174*

a) This tab is only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if the corresponding system is switched on.

b) The contents of the tab depend on the menu that was used last.

③ Button ◁ ▷

– **Switching tabs**: press the ◁ ▷ button to the left/right (for example, radio).

④ VIEW button

Switching the view: press the VIEW button to switch from the classic view ⇨ *page 19, fig. 5* to the enhanced view ⇨ *page 19, fig. 6*.

⑤ button ⮌

Returning to functions at higher levels

⑥ ❯ and ❮ control buttons

Opening/closing the selection menu or options menu ⇨ *page 21*.

⑦ Left thumbwheel

– **Selecting a function in a menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function in a menu or list (such as selecting a station, Lap times*).
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel (for example, confirm the station).
– **Zooming in/out on the map**: when a map is displayed, turn the left thumbwheel up/down to zoom in/out on the map.

Control buttons

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel plus

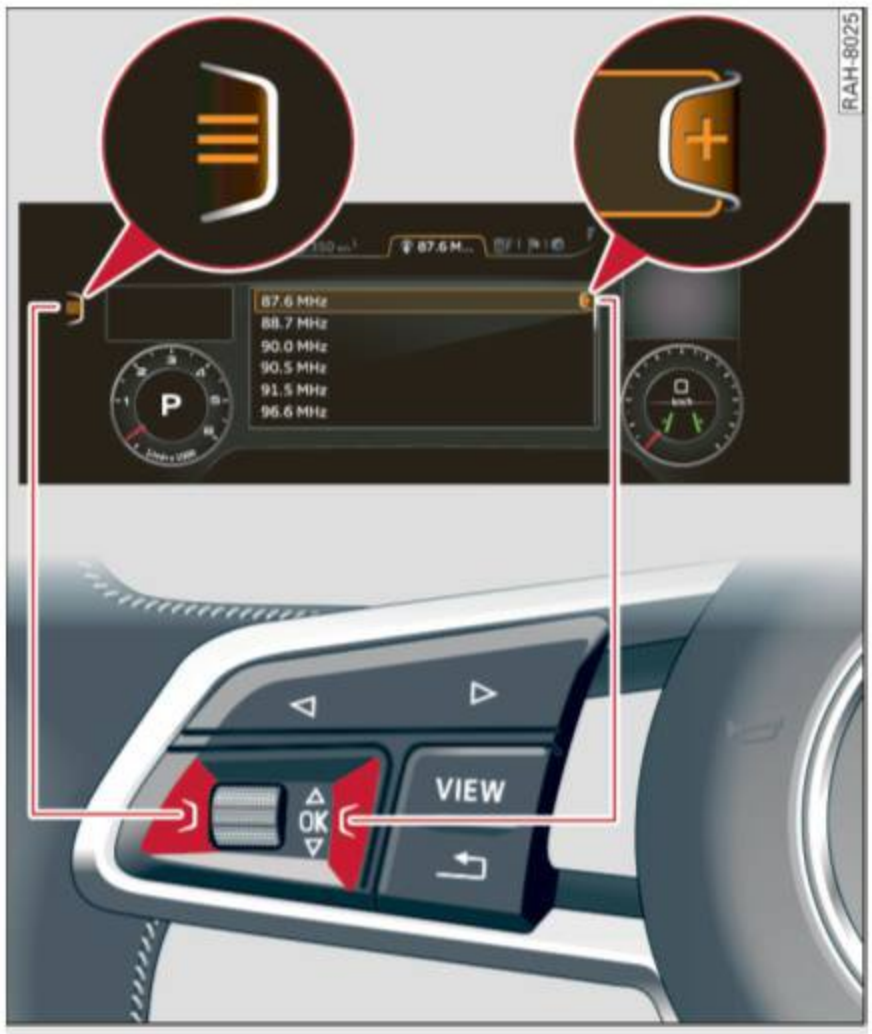


Fig. 9 Opening the selection and options menu

Left control button

– **Opening/closing the selection menu**: press the respective left control button on the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 9* . You can now select and confirm a function in the selection menu using the left thumbwheel (for example, selecting a frequency band).

Right control button

– **Opening/closing the options menu**: press the respective right control button on the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 9* . You can now adjust any context-dependent functions and settings using the left thumbwheel (for example, sound settings).

Preset buttons

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel plus

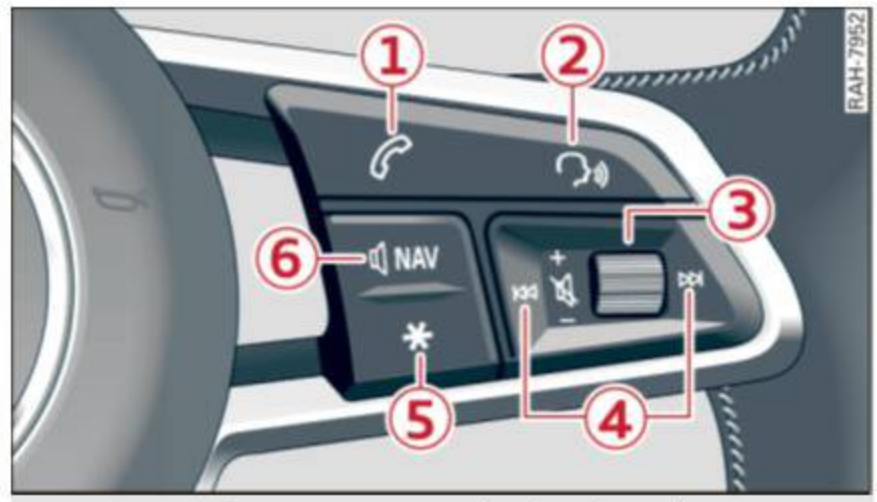


Fig. 10 Multifunction steering wheel, right side

① button

– **Accepting a call**: press the button when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a call**: press the button during an active phone call.
– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the button.

② button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: hold down the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 108, Voice recognition system*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward.
– **Muting/pausing**: press the right thumbwheel. **Or**: turn the right thumbwheel down.
– **Unmuting/resuming**: press the right thumbwheel. **Or**: turn the right thumbwheel up. ▶

8S0012721BB

④ button |◁◁| |▷▷|

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the |◁◁| or |▷▷| button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the |◁◁| or |▷▷| button until the desired location in the file is reached.

⑤ button |✳|

– **Programmable steering wheel button - opening a function**: press the |✳| button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - requesting a function**: hold down the |✳| button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - changing a function**: select the first tab > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

⑥ button |NAV|

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the |NAV| button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during a navigation prompt.

Multifunction steering wheel

Operating

The multifunction steering wheel has four buttons. With this feature, you can operate the driver information system and the MMI functions and you can also change the volume.



Fig. 11 Standard multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

① Operating the driver information system

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① ⇨ *page 20, fig. 7* that display various information ②.

The following tabs are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

1. Tab	Vehicle
2. Tab[a)]	Warnings
3. Tab	Radio ⇨ *page 150* Media ⇨ *page 155*
4. Tab[b)]	Sound ⇨ *page 174* Settings ⇨ *page 174*

a) This tab is only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if the corresponding system is switched on.

b) The contents of the tab depend on the menu that was used last.

– **Switching tabs**: press the |MODE| button on the multifunction steering wheel until the desired tab is displayed.
– **Selecting a function in the menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel to the desired function.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel to confirm your selection.
– **Scrolling within the lists**: turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel quickly to scroll within the lists.

② |VIEW| button

– **Switching the view**: press the |VIEW| button to switch from the classic view ⇨ *page 19, fig. 5* to the enhanced view ⇨ *page 19, fig. 6*.

③ Right thumbwheel

The volume of an audio source or a system message (such as traffic announcements) can be directly adjusted during the audio output.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel downward. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel upward. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warm. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the D or S selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Note

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time or there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduce operating noise.

Odometer



Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

Trip odometer and odometer

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button [O.O] ⇨ *fig. 12*.

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

On-board computer

You can access the following information in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 19, fig. 5* ④.

– Time and date ⇨ *page 174*
– Average consumption
– Range
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel through one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the vehicle battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .

Tips

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system.

Sport view

Applies to: vehicles with boost pressure indicator and engine oil temperature indicator (S models)

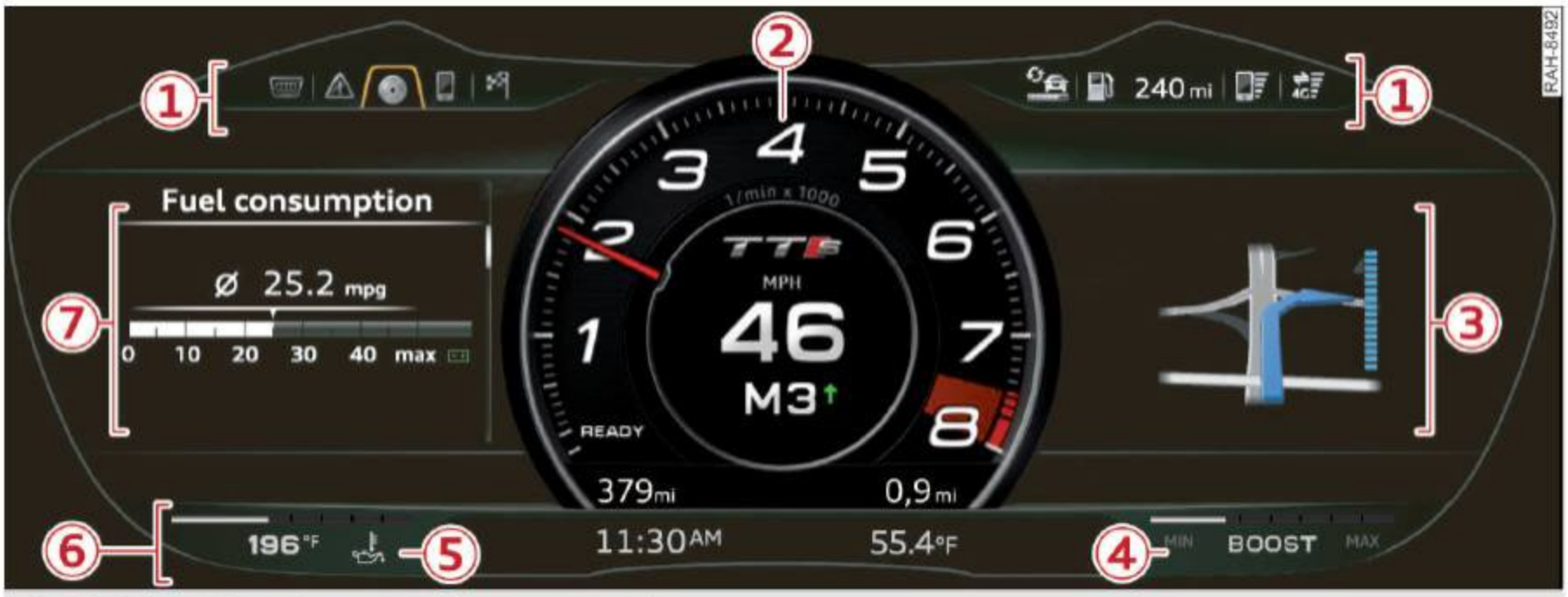


Fig. 13 Driver information system diagram: sport view

Always set the desired driver information system view before driving, because display functions will not be available for several seconds.

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Layout**
- ▸ Select the desired setting by moving the cursor (red frame).

The driver information system displays various items.

① Tab area
② Tachometer including digital tachometer and odometer displays
③ Additional display (divided in two sections in the enhanced view)
④ Boost pressure indicator
⑤ Engine oil temperature indicator
⑥ Status line
⑦ Function section (central area shifted to the left)

Boost pressure indicator (Boost)

A bar graph that begins on the left and fills in toward the right indicates the engine's current load (meaning the current boost pressure).

Engine oil temperature indicator

The display **---°F** appears in the instrument cluster when the engine oil temperature is below 140 °F (60 °C).

The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the  ⇨ *page 12* or  ⇨ *page 15* indicator light is not flashing in the display.

Tips

– You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system.
– If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to the heat radiating from the engine.
– At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠ *in Overview on page 19*.

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 27*,
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 28*,
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 30*, or
– Central locking switch inside ⇨ *page 29*.

Auto Lock

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the central locking system switch is used or one of the door handles is pulled. The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 29*.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 29*.

Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If the blinking continues, one of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is not closed or the ignition is still switched on.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– When locking using the button in the central locking switch, the vehicle will not lock if a door is open ⇨ *page 29*.
– On vehicles with a convenience key*, the luggage compartment lid unlocks again after closing if the most recently used key is in the luggage compartment. The emergency flashers blink four times.

Do not lock your vehicle with the remote control key or convenience key* until all doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed. This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out accidentally.

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Key set

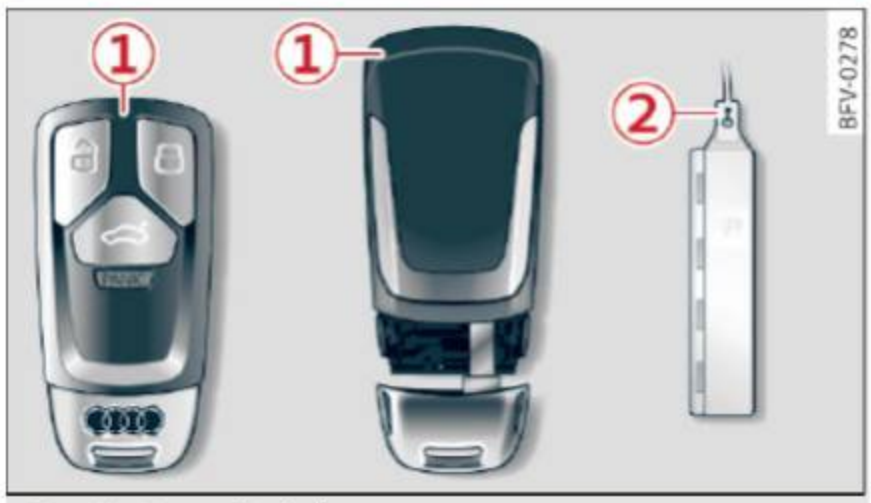


Fig. 14 Your vehicle key set

① Remote control key with integrated mechanical key

You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 26*. ▶

② Key tag with PIN

Only applies to vehicles with Connectivity service*: open the key fob and rub the PIN until it is visible. You can activate the Connectivity service* on your vehicle using this PIN code.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. To do this, select: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your remote control key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses "their own" master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Climate control system
– Parking aid*
– Active lane assist*
– Side assist*
– Drive select

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, open the doors or turn on the ignition.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Tips

The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked!

Removing the mechanical key

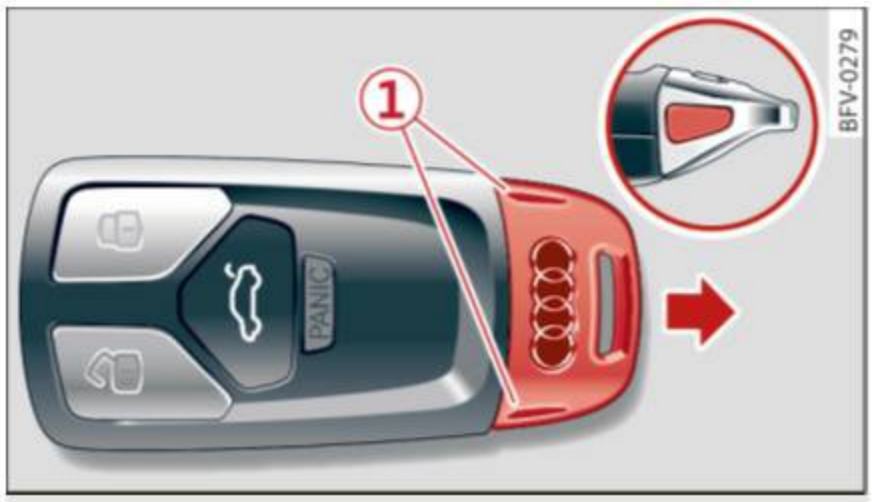


Fig. 15 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

▸ Press the release buttons ① ⇨ *fig. 15* and remove the mechanical key from the remote control key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– Lock/unlock the glove compartment.
– Manually lock/unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 30*.
– Emergency lock the doors ⇨ *page 30*.

LED and batteries in the remote control key

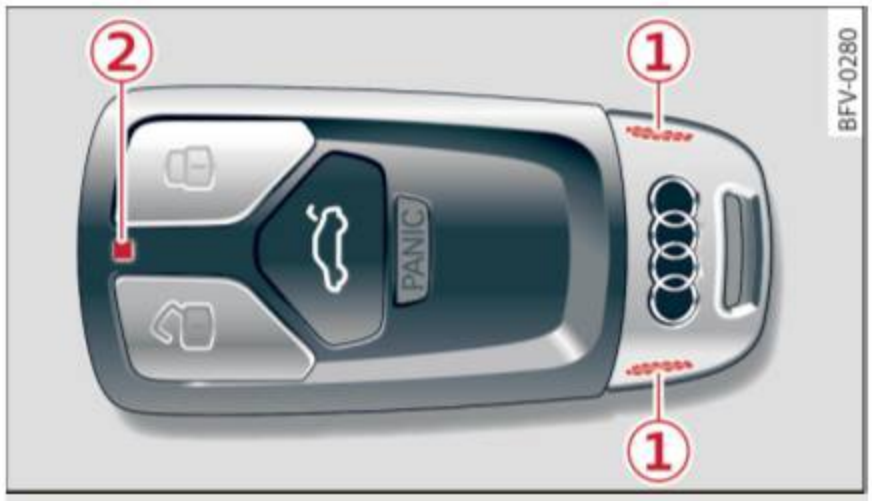


Fig. 16 Remote control key: removing the battery holder

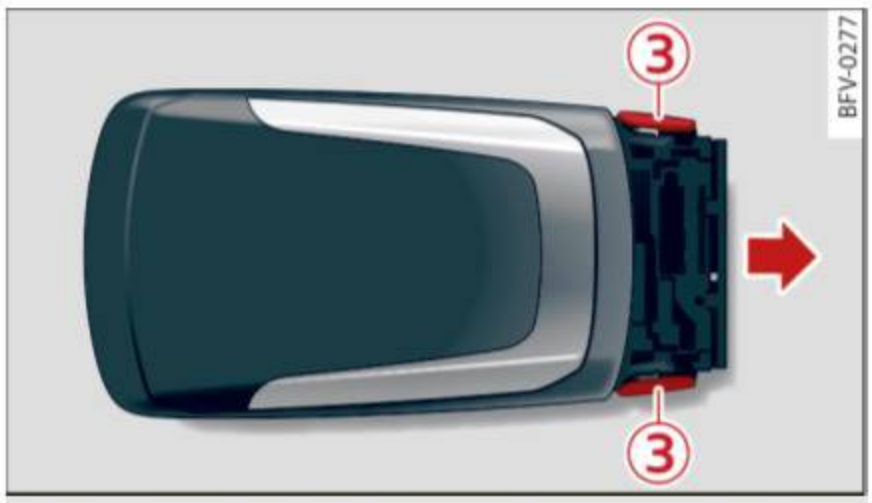


Fig. 17 Remote control key (rear side): removing the battery holder

LED in the remote control key

The LED (2) informs you of the remote control key function status.

- ▸ If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- ▸ If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- ▸ If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The indicator light and the message **Remote control key: change key battery** appear. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- ▸ Press the release buttons (1) ⇨ *fig. 16* and remove the mechanical key.
- ▸ Press the release buttons (3) ⇨ *fig. 17* on the battery holder and pull the battery holder out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
- ▸ Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing down.
- ▸ Slide the battery holder carefully into the remote control key.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery in the remote control key.

Unlocking/locking by remote control

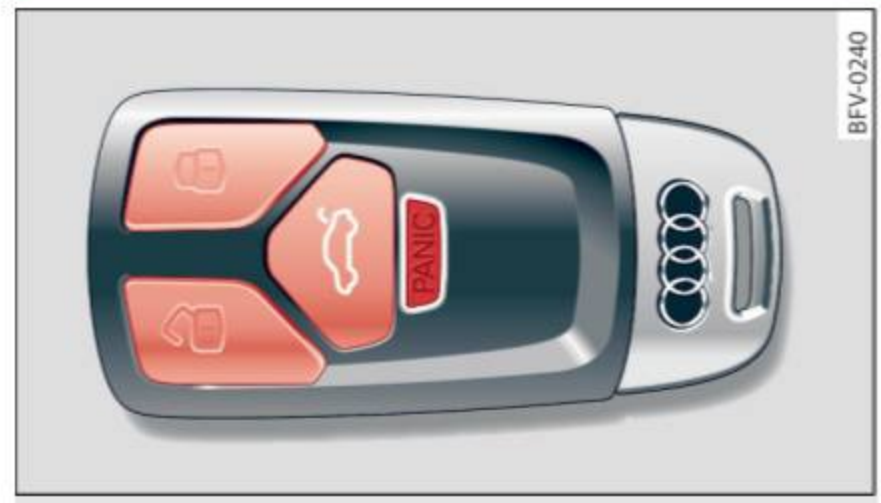


Fig. 18 Remote control key: button programming

- ▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.
- ▸ To open the luggage compartment lid, press the button.
- ▸ To trigger the alarm, press the red PANIC button. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers turn on.
- ▸ To switch off the alarm, press the red PANIC button again.

If the vehicle is unlocked and none of the doors, the rear lid or hood are opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*. ▶

WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 30*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

– Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
– Do not use the remote control when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could unintentionally lock the vehicle. If you then tried to start the engine or open a door, the alarm would be triggered. If this happens, press the unlock button.
– The selector lever must be in the P position on vehicles with a convenience key*. Otherwise the vehicle will not be able to lock.
– Only use the panic function in an emergency.

Unlocking and locking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked/locked without using the remote control key.

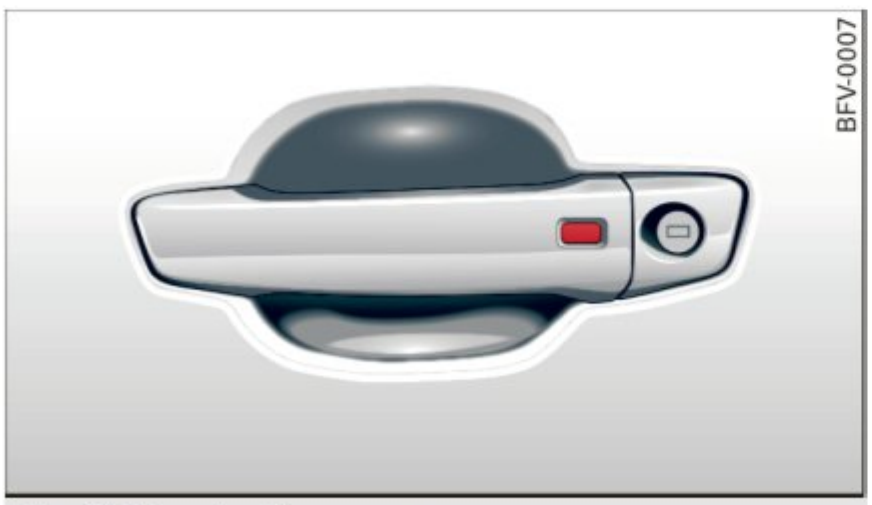


Fig. 19 Door handle: sensor

Unlocking the vehicle

- ▸ Grip the door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- ▸ Pull on the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

- ▸ Place the selector lever in the P position (automatic transmissions), or else the vehicle will not be able to lock.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 19*. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

You can unlock/lock the vehicle at every door. The remote control key cannot be more than approximately 5 ft (1.5 m) away from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your briefcase, for example.

If you hold the door handle while locking, this can impair the locking function.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

WARNING

Read and following all WARNINGS. ⇨ ⚠ *in Key set on page 26*

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:
– The proximity sensor switches off after a few days to save energy. You then have to pull once on the door handle to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open it.
– The energy management system gradually turns off unnecessary convenience functions to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible. You may not be able to unlock your vehicle using the convenience key.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 304*.

Central locking switch



Fig. 20 Driver's door: central locking switch

- ▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the button to unlock the vehicle.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– Opening the door and the luggage compartment lid from the *outside* is not possible (for security such as when stopped at a light).
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– The power locking switch works with the ignition off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 25*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the button in the central locking switch.

Setting the central locking system

In the Infotainment system, you can set which doors the central locking system will unlock.

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings**.

Door unlocking - you can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver** door should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver** in a vehicle with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

If you select **Driver**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the button on the remote control key twice.

Fold mirrors* - if you select **On**, the exterior rearview mirrors fold in automatically when you press the button on the remote control master key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

Lock when driving[1)] - if you select **On**, the vehicle locks automatically when driving. All of the doors and the luggage compartment lid lock.

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Emergency unlocking and locking the doors

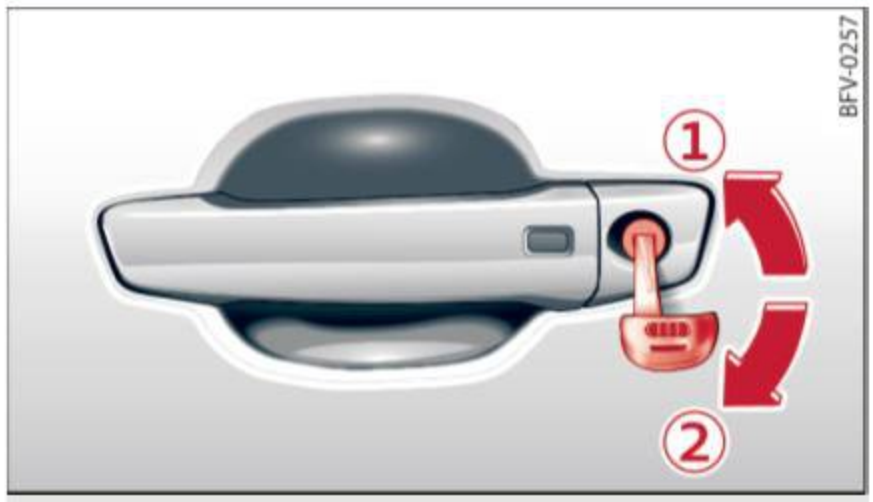


Fig. 21 Driver's door: door lock cylinder

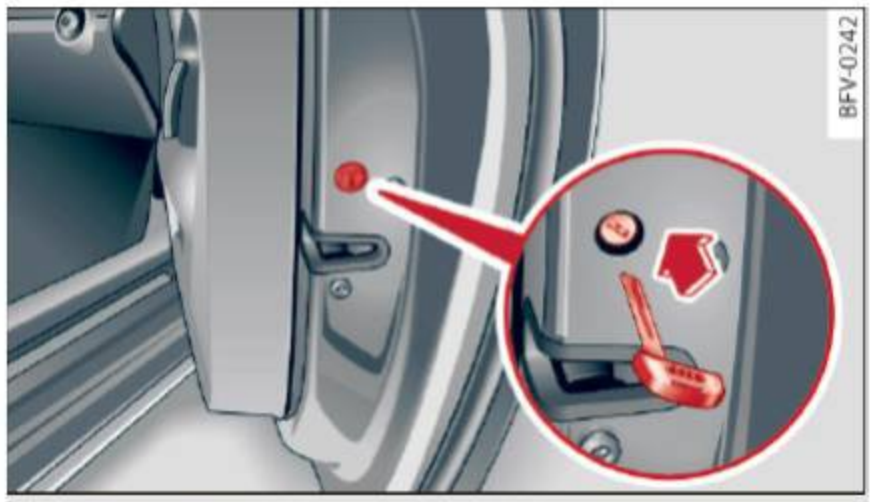


Fig. 22 Front passenger's door: emergency release

If the central locking system malfunctions, you must unlock/lock the doors separately using the mechanical key.

Unlocking/locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
- ▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position ① ⇨ *fig. 21*.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to the P position (automatic transmission) and turn the key **one time** to the close position ②.

Locking the front passenger's door with the mechanical key

The emergency lock is located on the edge of the front passenger's door. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
- ▸ Pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 22*.
- ▸ Insert the key into the slot inside and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or to the left (left door*).

Once the front passenger's door is closed, it is no longer possible to open it from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked as usual. It switches off when the vehicle is unlocked.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening/closing the luggage compartment lid

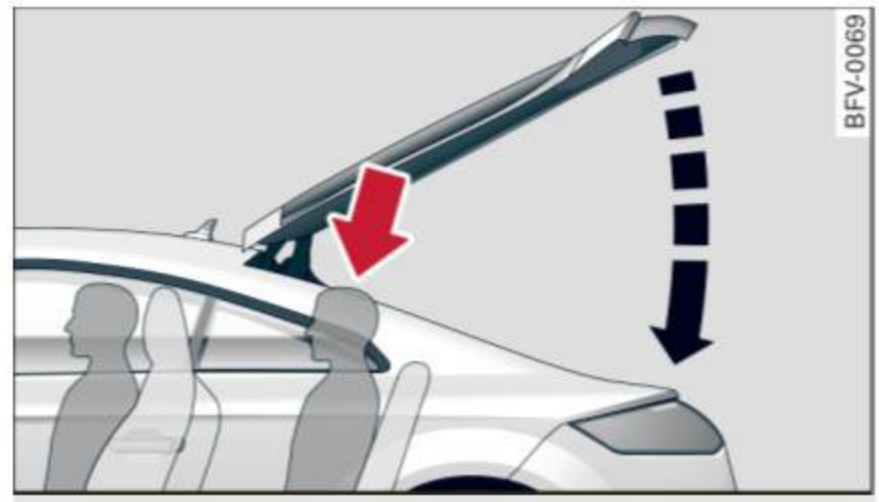


Fig. 23 Opened luggage compartment lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press the ⌧ button on the remote control key for at least several seconds to open the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Lift the luggage compartment lid.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Pull down the luggage compartment lid and let it close using a gentle push ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- – Due to the risk of injury, always be aware of the rear passengers when closing the luggage compartment lid.
- – After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the ▸

luggage compartment lid could open suddenly when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.

– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could climb into the vehicle through the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.
– Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– In case of an emergency or a faulty handle, the luggage compartment lid can be opened manually from the inside ⇨ *page 31*.

Luggage compartment lid emergency release

The luggage compartment lid can be released in an emergency from the inside.

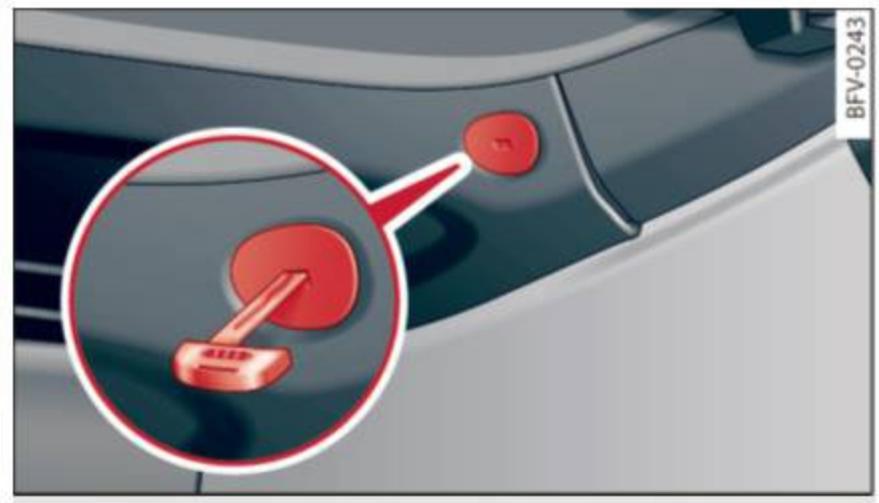


Fig. 24 The emergency release is accessed on the left side of the luggage compartment underneath the rear window.



Fig. 25 Section: inside of luggage compartment: emergency release

▸ Tilt the left rear seat backrest forward.
▸ Pry out the cover ⇨ *fig. 24* using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
▸ Pull the plastic cord in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 25*.

Power window

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

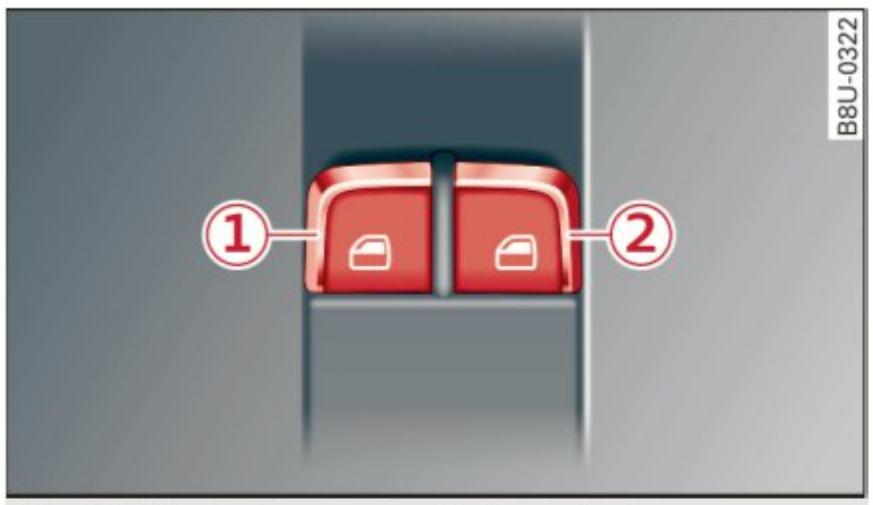


Fig. 26 Driver's door: power window controls

All power window switches have a two-stage function:

Opening and closing the windows

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed/pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Power window switches

① Left door
② Right door

WARNING

– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. Pinching could cause serious injuries.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

– You can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 minutes after turning the ignition off. The power windows do not switch off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.
– When you open the doors, the windows automatically lower approximately 10 mm.

Convenience opening/closing

All windows can be opened and closed at the same time.

Convenience opening feature

- ▸ Press the button on the remote control key until all windows reach the desired position.

Convenience closing feature

- ▸ Press the button on the remote control key until all windows are closed ⇨ ⚠ or

Convenience closing with the convenience key*

- ▸ Touch the sensor* on the door handle long enough until all windows are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings**.

To enable the convenience window opening function, the **Long press to open windows** function must be switched **on**.

WARNING

– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows can only be opened and closed with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6 ft (2 m) away from the vehicle. When pressing the button, always watch the windows while they are closing so that no one is pinched in the window. The closing process will stop immediately when the button is released.

Correcting power window malfunctions

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

- ▸ Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 27 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener (HomeLink), you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. Up to three remote control functions can be programmed to the three buttons that are integrated in the control unit above the rearview mirror.

To be able to operate systems using the garage door opener, the buttons in the control unit must first be programmed.

WARNING

When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.

Tips

- For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
- For additional information about HomeLink, visit **www.homelink.com**.
- For the Declaration of Conformity with the provisions from the FCC in the United States and Industry Canada, see ⇨ *page 304*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

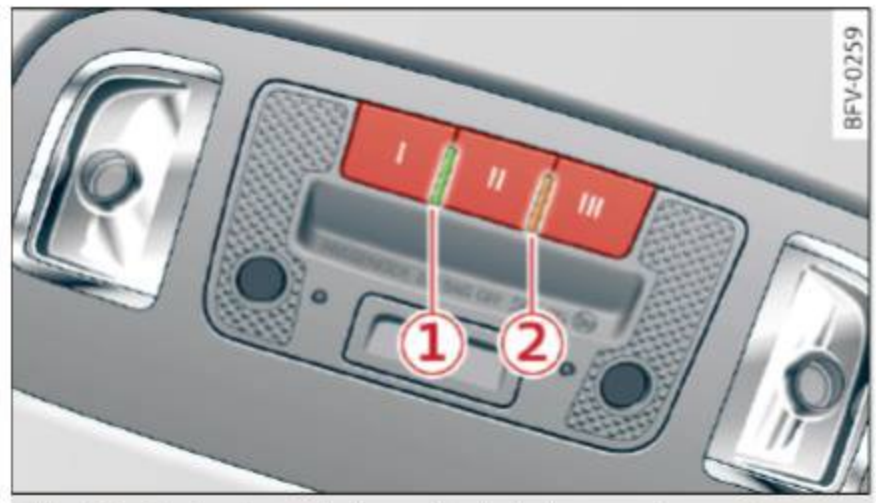


Fig. 28 Control panel above the interior rearview mirror

Requirement: the button in the control panel must be programmed ⇨ *page 34* and the vehicle must be located within range of the system, such as the garage door.

- ▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The green LED (1) blinks or turns on.
- ▸ Press the button again to close the garage door.

Tips

To open or close the garage door, do not press the button longer than 20 seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Programming the transmitter

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

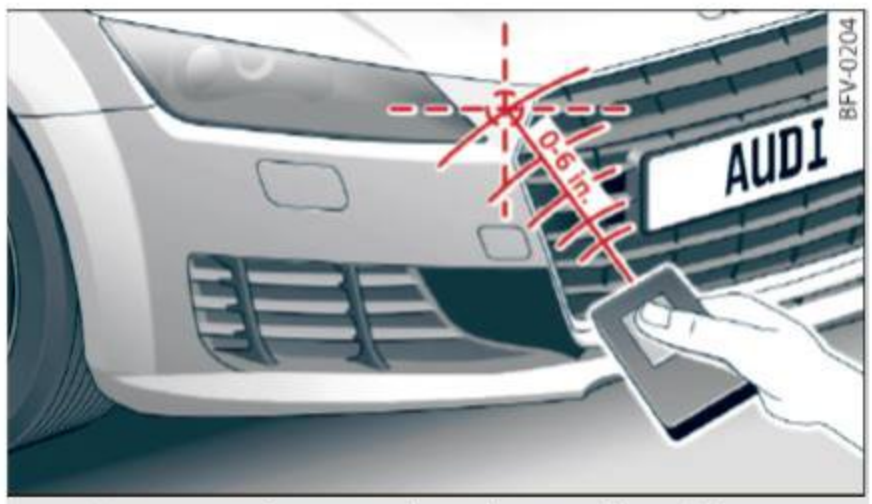


Fig. 29 Distance between the radiator grille and the remote control transmitter

Programming the button: step 1 on the control panel

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press both of the outside buttons on the control unit ⇨ *page 33, fig. 28* until the yellow LED ② turns off and the green LED ① blinks. This procedure clears the standard codes that were set at the factory and does **not** need to be repeated again to program the other buttons.
3. Briefly press the button in the control panel that you want to program.
4. Wait until the yellow LED ② blinks. The programming mode is active for 5 minutes.
5. Go in front of the vehicle with the original remote control transmitter for the system that you are programming to the control panel button.

Programming the button: step 2 at the radiator grille

6. Hold the remote control transmitter at the vehicle radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 29*.
7. Now press the remote control transmitter until the turn signals on your vehicle blink. This can take up to 30 seconds.
8. If the emergency flashers blink three times, the programming was successful. If the emergency flashers only blink one time, the five-minute time limit for programming has expired or the programming was unsuccessful. Repeat the programming starting from the third step or change the distance to the radiator grille.
9. If the garage door or other systems do not open with the HomeLink buttons even if the programming was successful, the system may use a rolling code instead of a fixed code. You must also then perform **rolling code programming** ⇨ *page 35*.

The other two buttons in the control panel can be programmed using the instructions given above. Start with step 3.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually. They must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Press both of the outside buttons on the control unit until the yellow LED ② turns off and the green LED ① blinks.

Reprogramming buttons

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ To reprogram an individual button, press the desired button until the green LED ① turns off and the yellow LED ② starts to blink (after approximately 20 seconds). Release the button immediately. The programming mode is active for 5 minutes.
- ▸ Continue with step 5.

Tips

– The distance needed between the remote control transmitter and the HomeLink module in the radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 29* depends on the system you are programming.

– Depending on the system model, you may need to release the button on the remote control transmitter while it is programming and press it again. Hold every position you try when programming for at least 15 seconds before trying a new position. Keep an eye on the vehicle turn signals while doing this.

Rolling code programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

On some systems, programming a rolling code is also necessary.

Identifying a rolling code

- ▸ Press the button in the control unit that is already programmed again and hold it down.
- ▸ Watch the green LED (1) ⇨ *page 33, fig. 28*. If the green LED blinks quickly, the system (such as a garage door) has a rolling code.
- ▸ Program the rolling code as follows:

Activating the system motor unit

- ▸ Locate the programming button on the system motor unit. The exact location and color of the button may vary depending on the system manufacturer's brand.
- ▸ Press the programming button on the system motor unit (usually this will activate a “display” on the motor unit). You now have approximately **30 seconds** to program the button in the control panel.

Programming the button in the control panel

- ▸ Press the previously programmed button in the control panel for 2 seconds.
- ▸ To complete rolling code programming, press the button again for 2 seconds.
- ▸ On some systems, the button might need to be pressed a third time to end the programming procedure.

After programming, the system should recognize the signal and operate when the button in the control panel is pressed. Now you may program the other buttons as needed.

Tips

– The rolling code can be programmed more quickly and more easily with the help of a second person.
– If any difficulties occur when programming the rolling code, it may be helpful to read the system operating manual.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 30 Instrument panel: light switch

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - lights are off (in some markets, the daytime running lights* are switched on when the ignition is switched on.)

- **USA models:** the daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is set to the **O** or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight). The **Daytime running lights** can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 37*⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** the daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is set to the **O**, or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO* - automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels.

- Parking lights

- Low beam headlights

- All-weather lights*

- Rear fog light(s)

All-weather lights*

In vehicles with all-weather lights, the front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are less likely to see glare from your own headlights, for example when driving on a wet road.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control system*

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that there is less glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Light functions

The following light functions may be available depending on vehicle equipment and only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position.

Static cornering light* (vehicles with LED headlights) - the cornering light switches on automatically when the steering wheel is turned at a certain angle at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km/h) and when the turn signal is activated at speeds up to approximately 25 mph (40 km/h). The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

Highway light function* (vehicles with LED headlights) - this function adapts the lighting for highway driving based on vehicle speed.

Speed dependent light distribution* (vehicles with LED headlights) - the speed dependent light distribution adapts the light in towns and on highways or expressways. Intersections can also be illuminated on vehicles with a navigation system*.

⚠ WARNING

- Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beam under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- The rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations, to prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle. ▶

– If the battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Always make sure your vehicle is parked and adequately lit according to the laws. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.
– Always observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

Tips

– The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is in the rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
– Some exterior lighting functions can be adjusted ⇨ *page 37*.
– If you turn off the ignition while the exterior lights are on and open the door, a warning tone sounds.
– In some markets, the tail lights will switch on when the daytime running lights switch on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signal and high beam lever

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

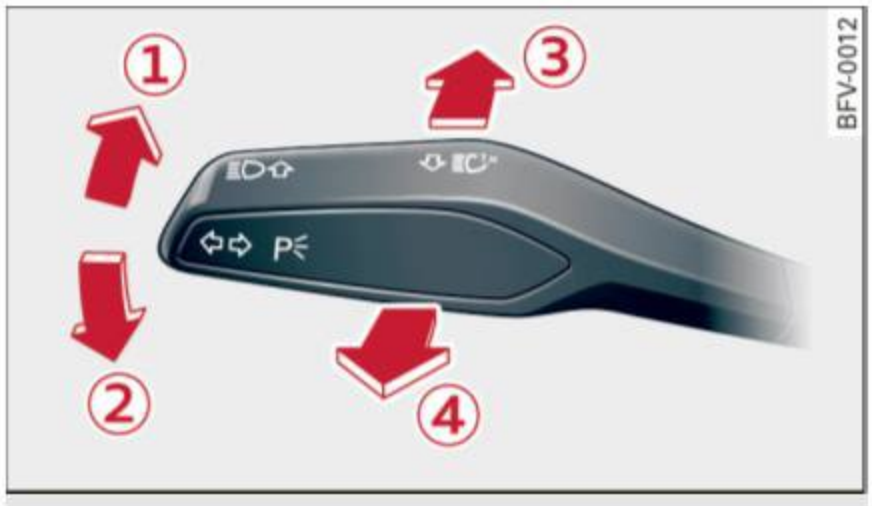


Fig. 31 Turn signal and high beam lever

Turn signals

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on.

① - right turn signal

② - left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - high beams on

④ - high beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Audi adaptive light* - you can switch adaptive light **On** and **Off**.

Daytime running lights*

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on or off using the MMI. Select **On** or **Off**. ▶

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on. This menu item is shown with a “gray background”.

Coming home, Leaving home

The coming home function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you turn the ignition off and open the driver's door. To switch on the function, select **Entry/exit lighting**.

The leaving home illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you unlock the vehicle. To switch on the function, select **Entry/exit lighting**.

The coming home and leaving home functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Emergency flasher



Fig. 32 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

- ▸ Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Tips

You should switch the emergency flashers on if:

- You are the last car in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see you, or if
- Your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency, or if
- Your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle.

Interior lighting

Interior lighting

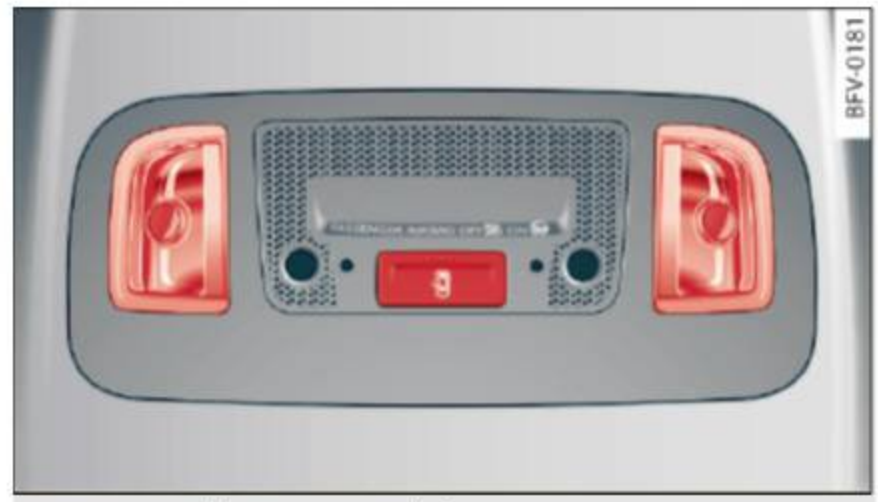


Fig. 33 Headliner: interior lighting

⚿ - Door contact switch. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

A switch is no longer needed to switch the reading lights on. A swiping movement or a brief tap on the light is all that is needed to switch the light on or off. If you hold your finger on the reading light when switching it on, this can dim the light down to a certain level.

Interior lighting

There are other optional interior lighting functions that are available. Several functions can be set in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting**.

Instrument illumination



Fig. 34 Instrument illumination

The brightness of the instrument cluster and the center console can be adjusted.

- ▸ Press the knob to release it.
- ▸ Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- ▸ Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 35 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

/ - Adjusting the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heating the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folding exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's outside mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. Your may estimate incorrectly when you use these mirrors to gauge your distance from the vehicles behind you when changing lanes, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.

Tips

If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

8S0012721BB

Dimming the mirrors

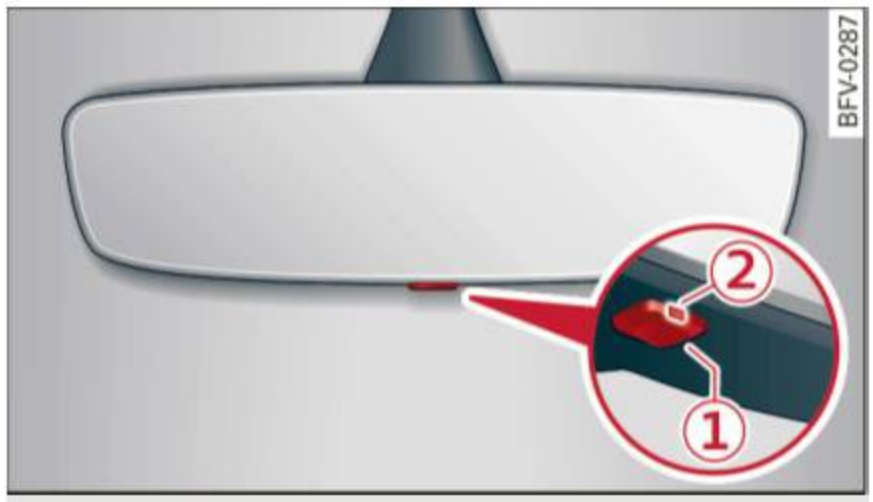


Fig. 36 Automatic dimming rearview mirror

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ Press the button ① ⇨ *fig. 36*. The indicator light ② turns on. Interior and exterior mirrors* will dim when there is incoming light (such as headlights from the rear).

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from automatic dimming mirrors if the glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes and airways.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces. Remove the liquid as quickly as possible, for example using a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors



Fig. 37 Sun visor

The sun visors can be moved out of their brackets and turned toward the doors ⇨ *fig. 37* ①. The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

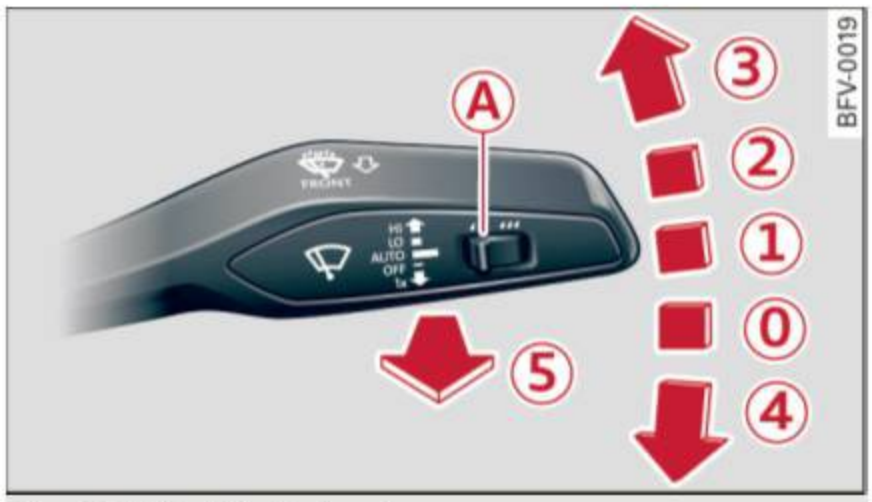


Fig. 38 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - windshield wipers off

① - interval mode. To increase/decrease the wiper intervals, move the switch Ⓐ to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor*, the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor* is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode* in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**.

② - slow wiping

③ - fast wiping

④ - single wipe If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - clean the windshield To eliminate water droplets, the windshield wipers perform one afterwipe after several seconds while driving in temperatures above 39 °F (4 °C). You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Cleaning the headlights*. The headlight washer system* only functions when the lights are switched on. The headlights are automatically cleaned the first time and every fifth time the lever is moved to position ⑤.

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 42, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
- Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0). This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor* function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- The washer fluid nozzles in the windshield washer system are heated* at low temperatures when the ignition is on. ▶

– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Clean the wiper blades with a soft towel and glass cleaner.

- ▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 42*.
- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

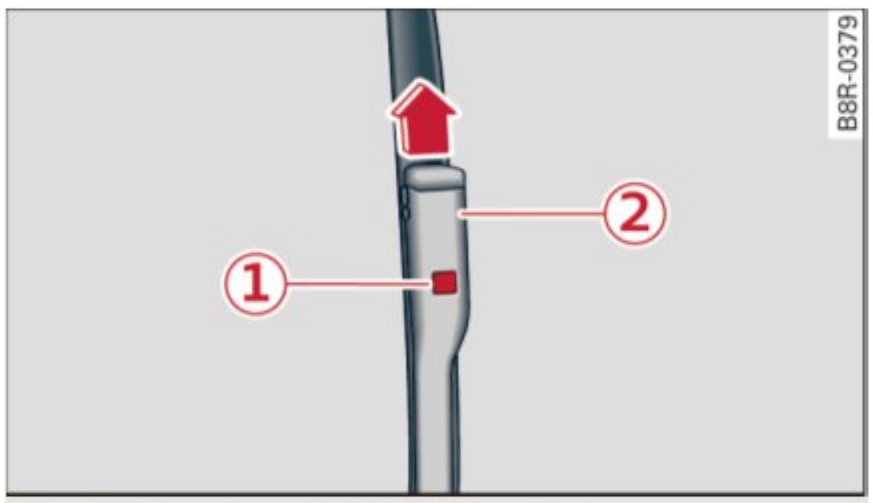


Fig. 39 Removing windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

- ▸ To bring the windshield wipers into the service position, turn the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ ⇨ *page 41, fig. 38*.
- ▸ To bring the wipers into the starting position, turn the ignition on and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ for at least two seconds ⇨ *page 41, fig. 38*.

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 39* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
- ▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- ▸ Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– The windshield wiper blades must only be folded away when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not drive your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

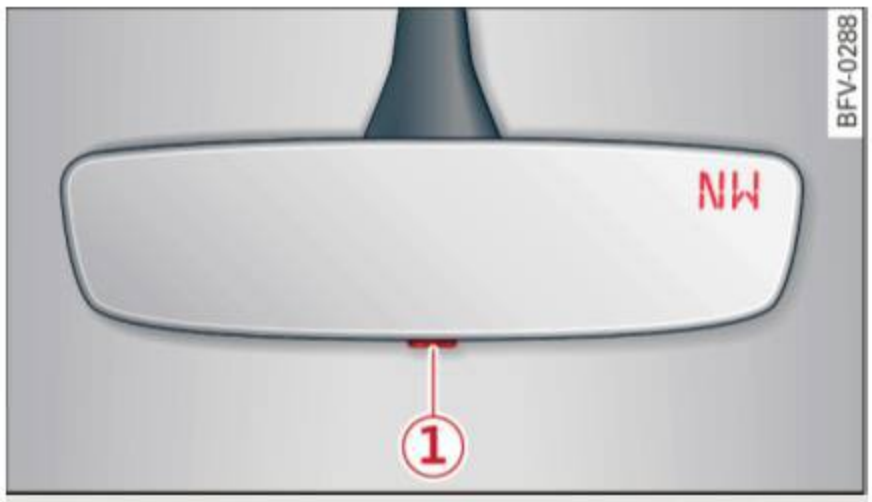


Fig. 40 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

▸ To turn the compass on or off, press the button (1) until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

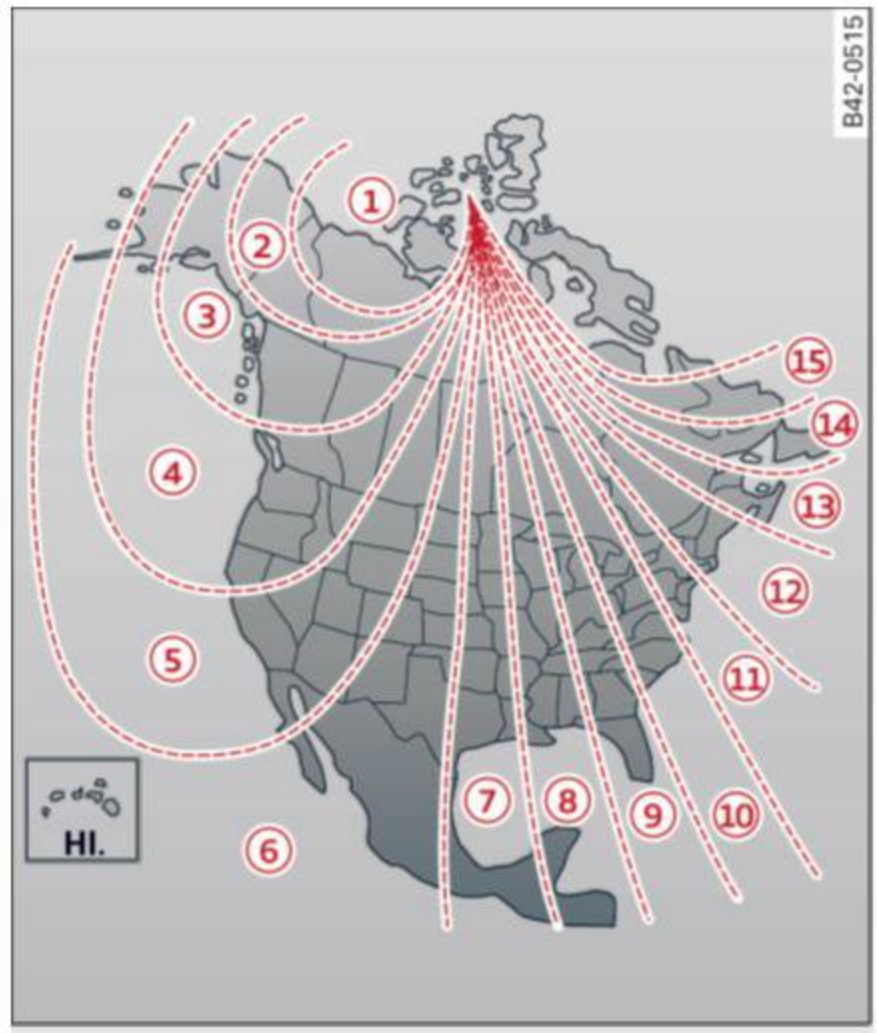


Fig. 41 North America: magnetic zone map

▸ Press and hold the button (1) ⇨ *page 43, fig. 40* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the interior rearview mirror.
▸ Press the button (1) repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

If the display is incorrect or inaccurate, the compass must be recalibrated.

▸ Press and hold the button (1) until a **C** appears in the interior rearview mirror.
▸ Drive in a circle at about 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.
– Always pay attention to the traffic and the area around your vehicle if you are reading the compass while driving.

Seats and storage

General information

WARNING

See ⇨ *page 180, Safe driving* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

Front seats

Power seat adjustment

Applies to vehicles with power adjustable seats

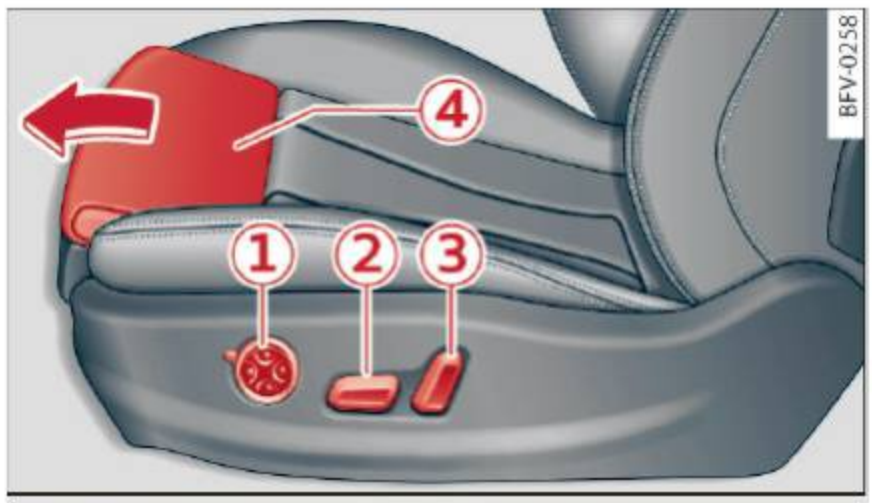


Fig. 42 Front seat: power seat adjustment

① - lumbar support or multifunction button*⇨ *page 44*. To adjust the lumbar support, press the button in the applicable location.

② - Moving the seat up/down: press the button upward/downward. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

② - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

③ - Adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

④- Lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the grip handle.

WARNING

– Only adjust the front seat with when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident

– The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle - they could be injured!
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.
– To minimize the risk of injury during sudden braking or a collision, the driver and the front passenger must not drive or ride with the backrest in the reclined position. The safety belts and airbag system can only provide the greatest protection possible when the backrests are in the upright position and the safety belts are worn correctly. The more a backrest is reclined, the greater the risk of injury due to an incorrect seating position and safety belt position.

Multifunction button

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction button

You can adjust the side bolsters using the multifunction button.

▸ If you turn the multifunction button ① ⇨ *page 44, fig. 42* to the left or right, the side bolsters on the seat backrests will increase/decrease the lateral support.

Tips

The air in the side bolsters* is released as soon as the driver's door opens. This makes is possible to enter and exit the vehicle more comfortably. As soon as you start driving the vehicle, the side bolsters fill.

Easy seat entry

Applies to: vehicles with entry assistance

Easy seat entry makes it easier to get into the back seats.

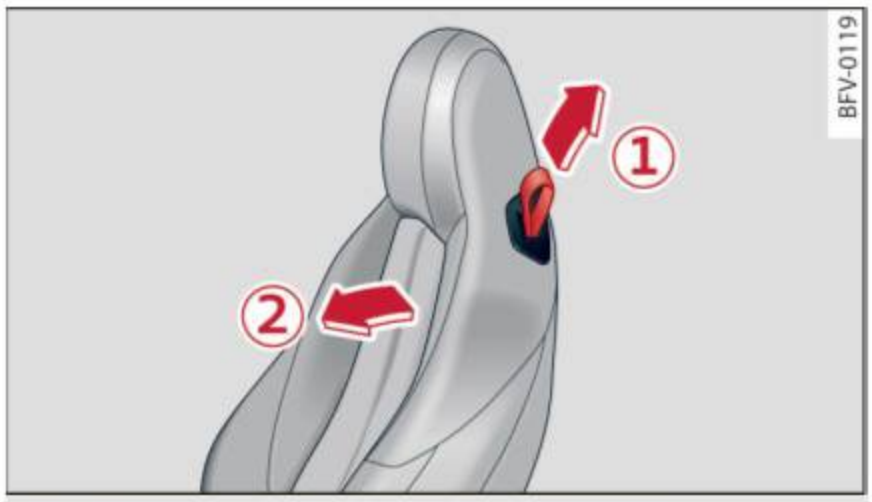


Fig. 43 Driver's seat: loop on the seat backrest

▸ To fold the front seat backrests forward, pull on the loop and fold the seat backrest.

WARNING

Always make sure the front seats are upright and securely locked in place when driving.

Center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with center armrest

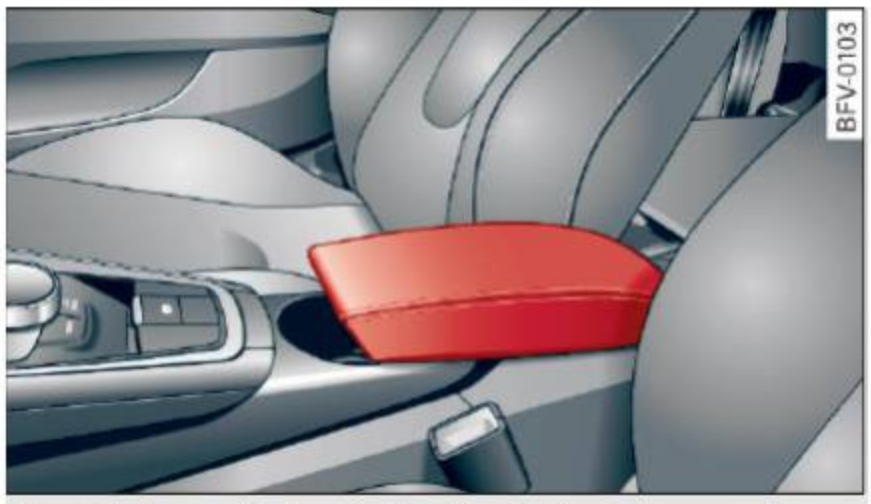


Fig. 44 Armrest between the driver's/front passenger's seats.

▸ To adjust the angle, raise the armrest ⇨ *fig. 44* notch by notch.

▸ To bring the armrest back down, raise it out of the top notch and fold it back down. Then lift the armrest to the desired position, if necessary.

Please note that the driver's ability to move his or arm may be restricted when the armrest is folded down. Because of this, the armrest should not be folded down during city driving.

The armrest can slide forward and back.

There is a storage compartment under the armrest.

Rear bench seat

Rear seat passengers must meet certain criteria.

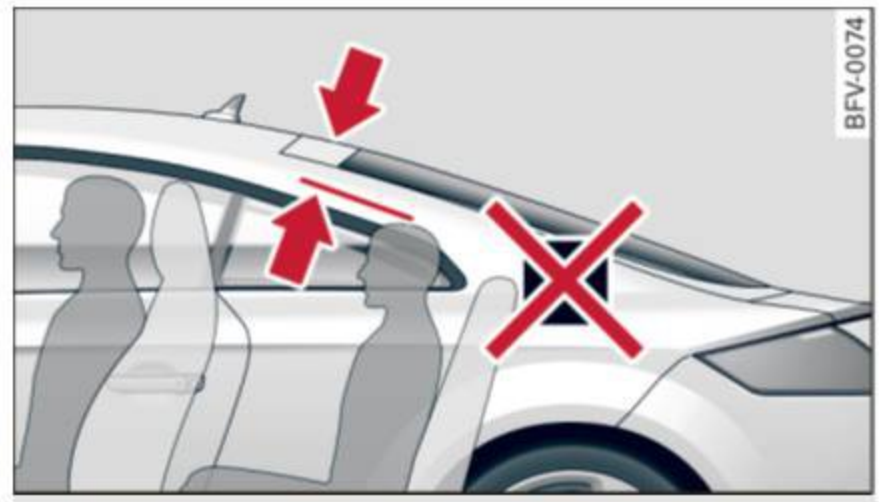


Fig. 45 Correct seated position on the rear bench seat

WARNING

– The rear bench seat may only carry persons with a height of up to 4 feet 9 inches (57 in/ 1.45 m).
– At the same time, the minimum distance between the head and the rear window when sitting upright should not be less than 1 inch (2.5 cm). Taller people could suffer severe injuries when closing the luggage compartment lid or during a collision. Always pay attention to the rear passengers when closing the luggage compartment lid.
– No heavy, hard objects may be placed on the luggage compartment cover. They endanger the vehicle passengers when opening the luggage compartment lid or when braking suddenly.

8S0012721BB

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray



Fig. 46 Center armrest folded up: ashtray

The ashtray is placed in the center console under the center armrest. Lift up the cover to open. Insert the ashtray securely back into the holder after every removal (emptying).

WARNING

Never use the ashtray to hold paper, because this increases the risk of a fire.

Cigarette lighter and socket

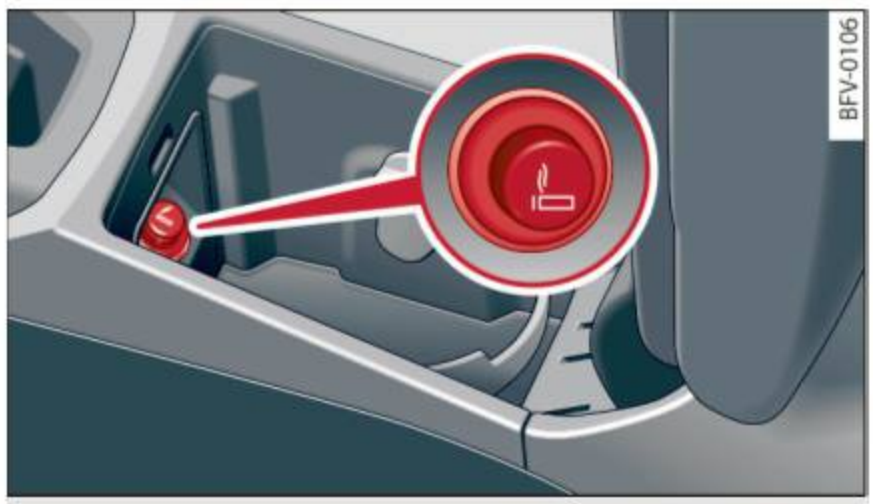


Fig. 47 Center armrest folded up: cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter or socket only functions when the ignition is switched on.

Using the cigarette lighter

- ▸ Fold the center armrest up to reach the cigarette lighter, if necessary.
- ▸ Press the cigarette lighter in.
- ▸ Remove the cigarette lighter when it pops out.

Using the socket

- ▸ Fold the center armrest up to reach the socket, if necessary.
- ▸ Remove the cigarette lighter, if necessary.
- ▸ Insert the plug for the electrical device into the socket.

The cigarette lighter has a standard 12 Volt socket that electrical accessories can be connected to. The power consumption at the outlet must not exceed 100 watts.

WARNING

Be careful when using the cigarette lighter. Inattentive or unsupervised use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12 Volt sockets or the cigarette lighter.

– To reduce the risk of damage to the sockets, only use plugs that fit correctly.

Storage

Beverage holders

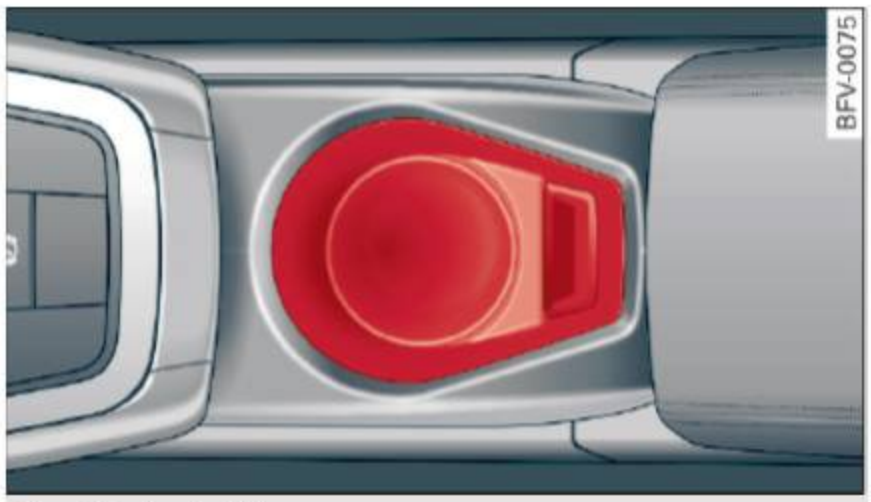


Fig. 48 Cup holder

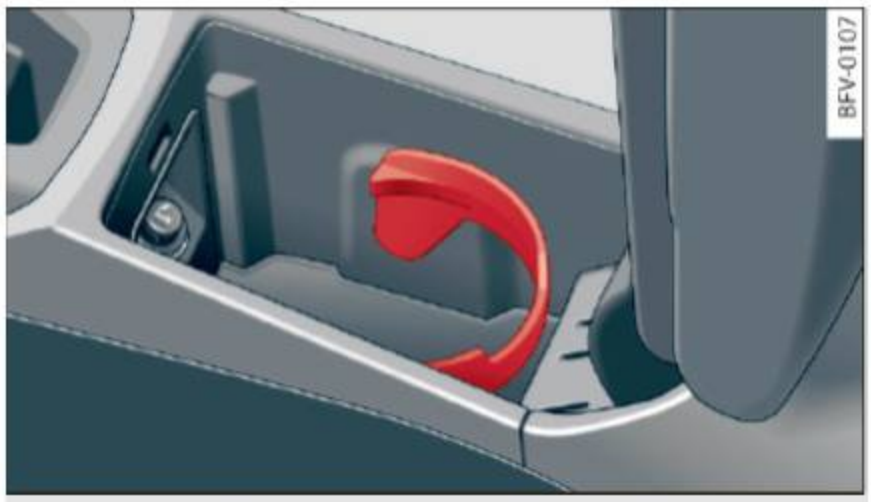


Fig. 49 Center armrest folded up: cup holder*

Cup holder* under the center armrest

- ▸ Fold up the center armrest ⇨ *page 45*.
- ▸ Fold the plastic bracket toward the rear, if necessary ⇨ *fig. 49*.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- Never drive with containers that contain hot liquid such as coffee or tea. The hot liquid could spill and cause burns during a collision, sudden braking or other vehicle movement. Spilled hot liquid can also increase the risk of accidents and injuries.
- Only use soft containers in the cup holders. Hard cups and glasses can increase the risk of injury during a collision.
- Never use the cup holder or the adapter as an ashtray - this is a fire hazard.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. If not, beverages could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment, such electronics or seat covers.

Additional storage compartments

You will find a range of storage compartments and holders at different locations in the vehicle.

- Compartments in the doors
- Storage area in the glove compartment. The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 26*.
- Storage compartment under the center armrest*
- Storage compartment on the rear side of the front seat*. The compartment can hold a maximum weight of 2.2 lbs (1 kg).
- Coat hooks

WARNING

- No heavy or hard objects may be placed on the storage compartment behind the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injuring the vehicle passengers when braking suddenly.
- Always leave the lid on the glove compartment cover closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury.
- Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the range of the side airbags.
- Make sure that the view to the rear is not obstructed by hanging garments.
- Hang only lightweight clothing and be sure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Do not use coat hangers to hang the clothing because this could impair the effectiveness of the side air bags*.

Note

Objects on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window can damage the rear window heating wires.

Roof rack

The roof rack must only be secured in the positioning bolt area.

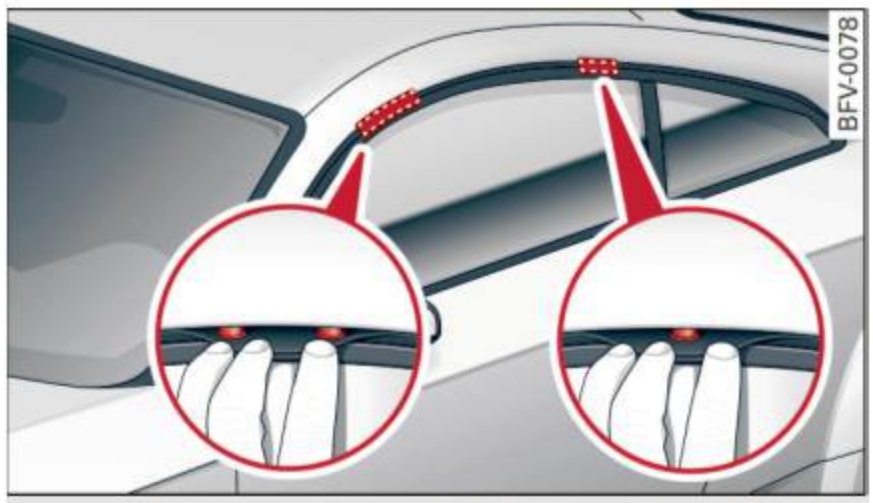


Fig. 50 Mounting locations for roof rack

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– Your vehicle has aerodynamic rain channels molded into the roof. This is why conventional roof luggage racks cannot be used. We recommend using roof rails from the Audi Genuine Accessories program.
– These roof rails are the basis for a complete roof rack system. For safety reasons, some additional attachments are necessary to transport luggage, bicycles, surf boards, skis and small boats safely. All these components are available at your authorized Audi dealer.
– The permitted roof load for your vehicle is 165 lbs (75 kg). The roof load is a combination of the weight of the carrier system and the cargo.
– When using roof rack systems with a lower load capacity, you cannot use the maximum permissible roof load. In this case, the roof rack can only be loaded to the weight limit given in the installation guide.

Installation

When installing the support feet, make sure they are only placed in the positioning bolt area between the side wall frame and the roof frame trim ⇨ *fig. 50*. The positioning bolt is visible as soon as you push the sealing lip back from the room frame trim using the designated tool.

WARNING

– The cargo must be securely attached on the roof rack; otherwise you increase the risk of an accident.
– You must under no circumstances exceed the permissible roof load, the permissible axle loads or the permissible overall weight of your vehicle because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Please note that there is a higher risk of an accident when transporting heavy objects or objects with a large surface on the roof rack, since the handling characteristics change due to a shift in the center of gravity or the greater surface area exposed to the wind. So adapt your driving and speed to the actual conditions.

Note

If you use other roof luggage rack systems or do not install the racks as intended, any damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. Carefully follow the assembly and installation instructions included with the roof rack carrier system.

For the sake of the environment

A roof rack is often left mounted out of convenience even if it is no longer used. Your vehicle will use more fuel due to the increased wind resistance. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Luggage compartment

General information

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 185, Stowing luggage*.

Luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover blocks the view into the luggage compartment.

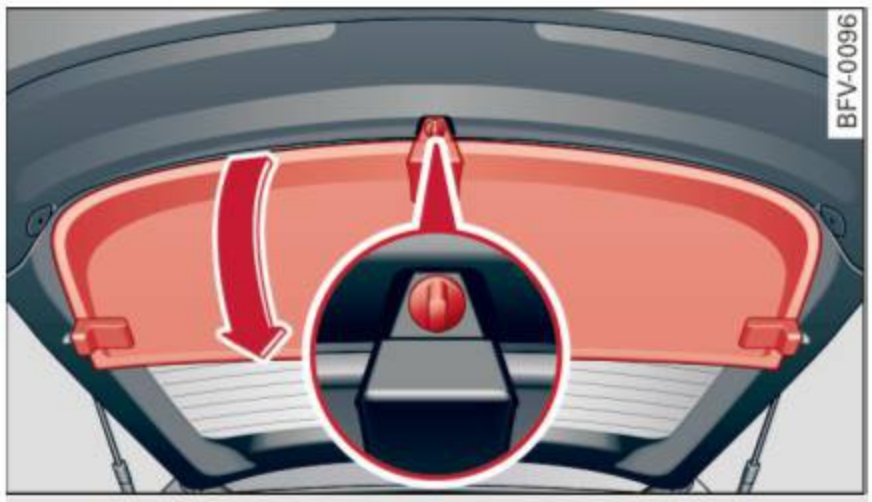


Fig. 51 Opened rear lid with luggage compartment cover

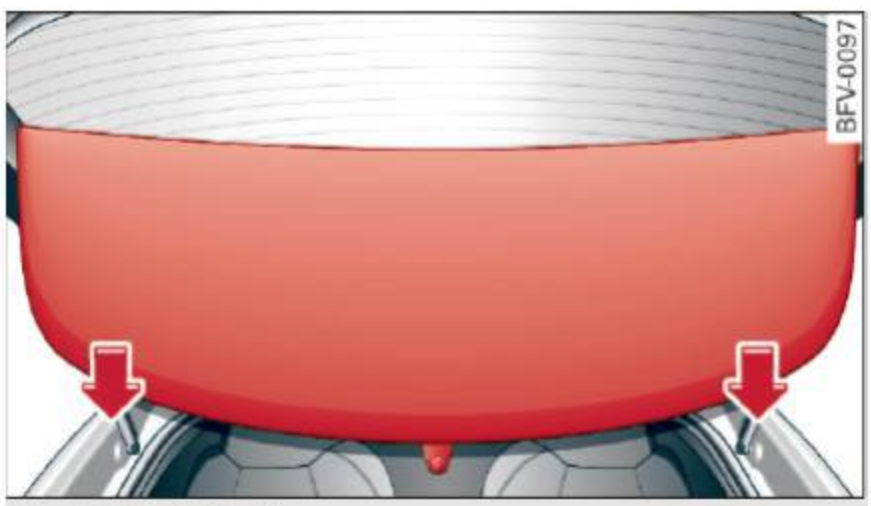


Fig. 52 Unlocked luggage compartment cover

Removing the luggage compartment cover

- ▸ To unlock the luggage compartment cover, turn the twist lock to the horizontal position ⇨ *fig. 51*.
- ▸ Grip the side of the luggage compartment cover and pull the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 52*.

Installing the luggage compartment cover

- ▸ Place the luggage compartment cover with the retainers on the pins and slide the cover upward.
- ▸ Turn the twist lock with gentle pressure to the vertical position.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of accidents, never install the luggage compartment cover without securing it.

– The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.

Note

The defogger and antenna wires in the rear window can be damaged by objects on the luggage compartment cover rubbing against them.

Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

To expand the luggage compartment, both sections of the backrest can be separated or can be folded forward together.



Fig. 53 Backrest release lever (left side)

Folding the backrest forward

- ▸ Push the release lever ⇨ *fig. 53* in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Fold the backrest forward.

Folding the backrest back into the upright position

- ▸ Fold the backrest down until it latches securely ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The backrest must be securely latched to ensure the safety belt is protecting the rear seat positions.

– The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking. ▶

Note

Make sure the safety belt is not pinched in the backrest lock and damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back.

Lowering the cargo floor

In exceptional situations, the cargo floor can be lowered.



Fig. 54 Luggage compartment: cargo floor removed



Fig. 55 Luggage compartment: spare tire removed

- ▸ Remove the cargo floor ⇨ *page 281*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic floor panel ⇨ *fig. 54*.
- ▸ Turn the handle counter-clockwise to remove and remove the foam piece.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.
- ▸ Reinsert the foam piece and turn the handle clockwise to tighten.
- ▸ Now reinsert the cargo floor.

WARNING

Please note that you are no longer mobile in the event of a flat tire. Please note the legal regulations before removing the spare tire.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

The climate control system warms, cools and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It functions most effectively when the windows are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

Key recognition

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

- For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
- Become familiar as quickly as possible with the correct use and function of the climate control system, especially with the defrosting and defogging function.
- When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

For the sake of the environment

Reducing the amount of fuel used also reduces the amount of pollutants that enter the air.

Tips

- To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow or leaves.
- Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- The energy management system may switch the seat heating* or rear window defroster off temporarily. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.
- The flows through the vents under the rear window. Make sure the openings are not covered when placing clothing on the luggage compartment cover.

Automatic climate control system controls

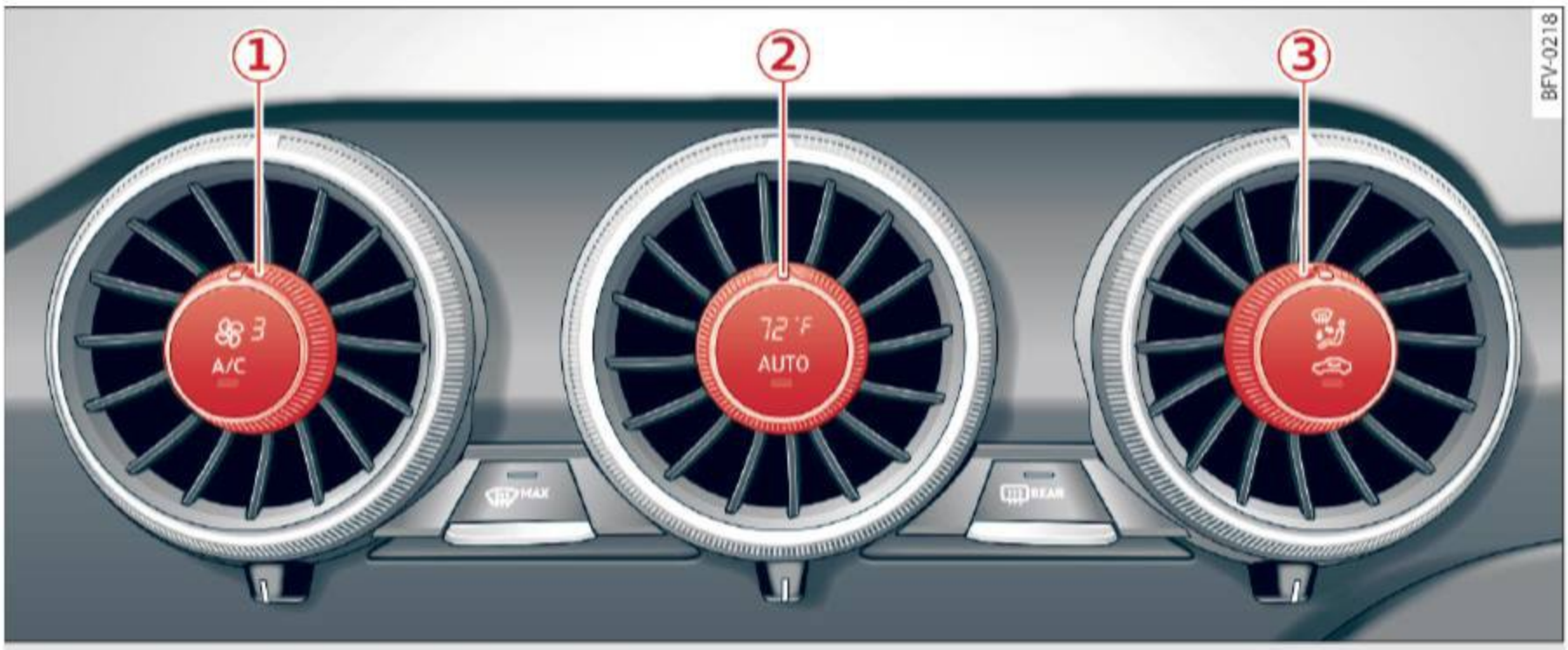


Fig. 56 Automatic climate control system: controls

You can control the functions through the dial, buttons in the dial and the buttons. Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C). The automatic climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. The air temperature coming from the vents, the blower speed, and the air distribution are also automatically adjusted. In all heating mode functions except *defrost*, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

Adjusting the blower

The blower speed can be adjusted in small increments using the dial (1). The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

A/C Switching cooling mode on and off

The cooling system is turned on and off with the A/C button. The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. Cooling mode switches off automatically when the outside temperature is below zero.

The temperature can be adjusted with the control (2).

Adjusting the temperature

The temperature can be adjusted in small increments using the dial (2).

AUTO Switching automatic mode on and off

The automatic mode is turned on using the AUTO button. AUTO mode switches off once a button in the climate control system is pressed. Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Adjusting the air distribution

The **air distribution** can be adjusted with the control (3). To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

The round air vents in the cockpit are adjustable ⇨ *page 53*.

To keep the front side windows from fogging up in damp weather, we recommend opening the side air vents and tilting them to the side. ▶

Switching recirculation mode on and off

The recirculation mode can be turned on manually or automatically*.

– Switching manual recirculation mode on and off: press
– Automatic* recirculation mode: auto recirculation needs to be activated in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Vehicle settings** > **Air conditioning** > **Auto recirculation**. The air quality sensor that is designed for diesel and gasoline exhaust automatically switches the recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollutants in the outside air.

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

Recirculation mode is switched off by pressing the button or AUTO or MAX.

MAX Switching defrost on and off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The optimum amount of air flows mainly out of the vents under the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature is controlled automatically.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on and off

If the rear window defogger is activated when the ignition is switched on, the battery management determines based on the battery charge if it is possible to turn on. Otherwise, the rear window defogger functions with the engine running and switches off automatically after approximately 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than two seconds. This remains stored up to approximately 15 minutes after turning off the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.

Adjusting the air vents

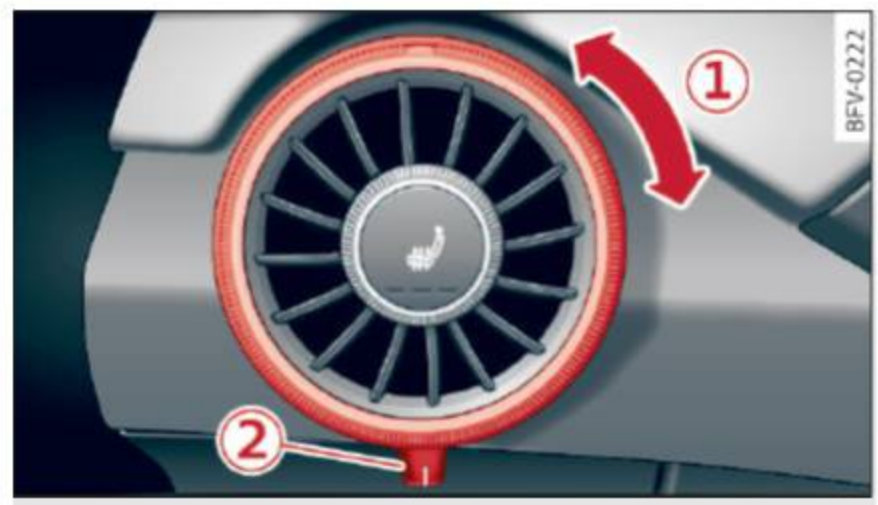


Fig. 57 Cockpit: adjusting the air vents

To adjust the **direction of air flow**, turn the ridged outer adjustment wheel ① ⇨ *fig. 57*.

To adjust the **amount of air flow**, move the lever ② on the air vent. To stop the air flow, move the lever all the way to the left.

Seat heating



Fig. 58 Air vents: seat heating

The seat heating has three levels. The selected heat level is indicated by the LED.

- ▸ To switch the seat heating on, press the button once.
- ▸ To switch to a lower level, press the button again.

▸ To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

The seat heating switches automatically from setting 3 to setting 2 after 10 minutes.

When seat heating should not be switched on

Do **not** turn the seat heating on under the following circumstances:

– The seat is unoccupied.
– The seat is covered with a seat cover.
– The seat is covered with a child seat.
– The seat is damp or wet.

WARNING

Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Tips

– The setting for the seat heating on the driver's side is assigned to the key that is in use.
– If the front passenger's seat heating is turned on, it will not turn on again automatically if more than 10 minutes have passed between switching the ignition off and switching it on again.

Driving

General information

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in, and the break-in distance should be 1,000 miles (1,500 km). Do not drive at speeds that will exceed 2/3 of the maximum permitted engine speed (RPM) for the first 600 miles (1,000 km), and avoid full acceleration during this period. You may gradually start increasing the RPM and the speed between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

During the first hours of use, the engine has a higher internal friction than later on when all moving parts have settled into place with each other.

How the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) also affects the engine quality. Drive at moderate engine speeds after the initial break-in period, particularly when running a cold engine. This will reduce engine wear and improve the mileage.

Do not drive at too *low* of an engine speed (rpm). Shift down if the engine stops running "smoothly". Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to reduce the risk of vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the effectiveness of the brakes may be reduced due to moisture on the brake rotors and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water, because this can cause corrosion.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact and the wear to the engine, brakes and tires depends mostly on your driving style. With an anticipatory and economic driving style, fuel consumption can be reduced by approximately 10-15%. The following tips will help you conserve the environment and your money at the same time.

Anticipatory driving

A vehicle uses the most fuel when accelerating. When you drive with anticipation, you do not need to brake as often and so you accelerate less. When possible, let your vehicle coast with a **gear engaged** - for example, when you notice that the next traffic light is red. ▶

Avoid full acceleration

You should rarely travel at the maximum vehicle speed. High speeds cause a disproportionately high increase in fuel consumption, emissions and traffic noise. Slower driving saves fuel.

Reduce idling time

It pays off to stop the engine, for example when at railroad crossings or traffic lights with longer red lights. Stopping the engine for 30-40 seconds already saves more fuel than the amount of extra fuel needed to restart the engine.

It takes a very long time in idle to warm the engine up to operating temperature. Wear and emissions are especially high in the warm-up phase. Therefore, you should begin driving immediately after starting the engine. Avoid high RPMs while doing this.

Have maintenance performed regularly

By having maintenance performed regularly on your vehicle, you can help to reduce fuel consumption before you even start to drive. The maintenance condition of your vehicle not only affects traffic safety and long-term value but also impacts **fuel consumption**.

A poorly maintained engine can lead to fuel consumption that is 10% higher than normal.

Also check the **oil level** when refueling. The **oil consumption** depends largely on the engine load and speed. It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest point only after a certain amount of use. Therefore, the oil consumption can only be properly judged after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km) have been driven.

Avoid short trips

The engine and exhaust cleaning system must reach their optimal **operating temperature** to effectively reduce consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses a disproportionately high amount of fuel. The engine reaches operating temperature and consumption normalizes only after approximately *four* kilometers.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Note

– Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering wheel position is fully adjustable up and down and forward and back.



Fig. 59 Lever on the steering column

- ▸ Tilt the lever ⇨ *fig. 59* downward ⇨ ⚠
- ▸ Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever against the steering column until it is secure.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjustment and an incorrect seating position can cause serious injuries.

- – Only adjust the steering column when the vehicle is stationary so that you do not lose control of the vehicle.
- – Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is at least a 10 in (25 cm) distance between your chest and the steering wheel. If you do not maintain this distance, you will not be properly protected by the airbag system.
- – If your physical characteristics prevent you from sitting at least 10 in (25 cm) or more away from the steering wheel, see if your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can provide adapters that will help.
- – If your face is level with the steering wheel, the airbag does not provide as much protection during a collision. Always make sure that the steering wheel is level with your chest.
- – Always hold the steering wheel with your hands in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
- – Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or with both hands on the rim or the center of the steering wheel. Holding the steering wheel incorrectly significantly increases the risk of injury to the hands, arms and head if the airbag deploys.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP *button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.*



Fig. 60 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Switching the ignition on/off

- ▸ To switch the ignition on or off, press the START ENGINE STOP button. Do not press the brake pedal while doing this.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever into the P or N position ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *fig. 60*. The engine will start.

If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. Repeat the starting process.

⚠ WARNING

- – To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces. ▶

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
– The brake booster and power steering only work when the engine is running. If the engine is off, you have to use more force when steering or braking. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

– Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
▸ Move the selector lever into the P position.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 57, fig. 60*.

Emergency off function*

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off while driving at speeds starting at 4 mph (7 km/h). To switch the engine off, press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row briefly or press and hold for longer than two seconds.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
– Please note that the brake booster and power steering only work when the engine is running. When the engine off, you must use more force to steer or brake the vehicle. Because the usual steering and braking capability is not available, the risk of accidents or injuries increases.
– For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll.
– After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition switched off. It can also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises as the result of heat buildup or if the engine is already warm and the engine compartment is also heated by the sun's rays.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Messages

Turn off ignition before leaving vehicle. Battery is discharging

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on. Switch the ignition off so that the battery will not discharge.

Pressing start/stop button again will switch off engine.

This message appears when you press the START ENGINE STOP button while driving.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The engine automatic start system has a malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to ▸

have the malfunction corrected. To start the engine, press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button.

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is no convenience key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the key. The convenience key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by an object that *disrupts* the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the signal.

To still be able to start or stop the engine, see ⇨ *page 59, Starting the engine when there is a malfunction*.

Remote control key: key not recognized. Is the key still in the vehicle?

The indicator light turns on and this message appears if the convenience key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the convenience key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Please press brake pedal

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Please press clutch pedal

This message appears in vehicles with manual transmissions if you do not press the clutch pedal when starting the engine. The engine can only be started when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Please select N or P

This message appears when starting or stopping the engine if the selector lever is not in the N or P position. The engine will not start/stop.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors can be locked in P only

This message appears for safety reasons along with a warning tone. It appears if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P position when switching the ignition off with the START ENGINE STOP button. Place the selector lever in the P position. The vehicle could roll if the lever is not in P. You also cannot lock the vehicle using the locking sensor on the door handle or using the convenience key.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affected the key or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 61 Steering column/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

As long as the message **Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual** is displayed, you can emergency start your vehicle.

- Press the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠ *in Starting the engine on page 57*.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button.
- Hold the master key in the location indicated as shown in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 61*. The engine will start.
- If the engine does not automatically start, press the START ENGINE STOP button again.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Electromechanical parking brake



Fig. 62 Center console: parking brake

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake (1) ⇨ *fig. 62*. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- ▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch illuminates. The PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light also turns on in the instrument cluster display.
- ▸ To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light in the display turn off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the parking brake must be set.

- ▸ To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 61, Starting from a stop*.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brake operation malfunctions or is disabled.

- ▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- ▸ As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Parking

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- ▸ Place the selector lever in the P position.
- ▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if a gear is selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake if it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. ▸

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving your vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked - especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and your vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 61*.

Tips

– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.
– If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Starting from a stop

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed.

▸ To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be in an uphill direction of travel.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained for a brief moment ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. During this time, you can easily begin to move your vehicle.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

– If you do not begin driving immediately or the engine stalls after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The intelligent technology of hill hold assist cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks.
– Hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled DSG transmission called S tronic. Two independent clutches transfer the power between the engine and transmission. It allows the ▶

8S0012721BB

vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

The transmission upshifts or downshifts automatically. The driving style continuously influences the selection of the driving program.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)**.

Selector lever positions



Fig. 63 Instrument cluster: selector lever positions

The Infotainment system display shows the current selector lever position and the engaged gear.

P - Park

You can only shift into Park when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

To shift in and out of the P selector lever position, press the interlock button in the selector lever *while* pressing the brake pedal.

R – Reverse

Only shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠.

To select the R selector lever position, press the interlock button *while* pressing the brake pedal. The back-up lights switch on in the R position if the ignition is switched on.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in idle in this position.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the D/S selector lever position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal D mode or in the S sport mode. To select the S sport mode, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal D mode. The selected driving mode is shown in the Infotainment display.

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

To move from selector lever position N to D, you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS.

- The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never select R or P while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except P) when the engine is running. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident.

▶

– Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped if a gear is engaged. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
– Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
– Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the P position.
– To decrease the risk of an accident, the selector lever must be in the P position and the parking brake must be set before opening the hood and working on a running engine. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 244, Working in the engine compartment*.

Note

Never let the vehicle roll downhill with engine off and the selector lever in the N position, because this could damage the automatic transmission and catalytic converter.

Tips

– Drive select: sporty shifting characteristics can be selected using the **Dynamic** driving mode. The Infotainment display shows S as the selector lever position instead of D.
– If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal immediately and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D or S.
– If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the P position. The emergency release can be used if this happens. Left-hand drive vehicles ⇨ *page 69*.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

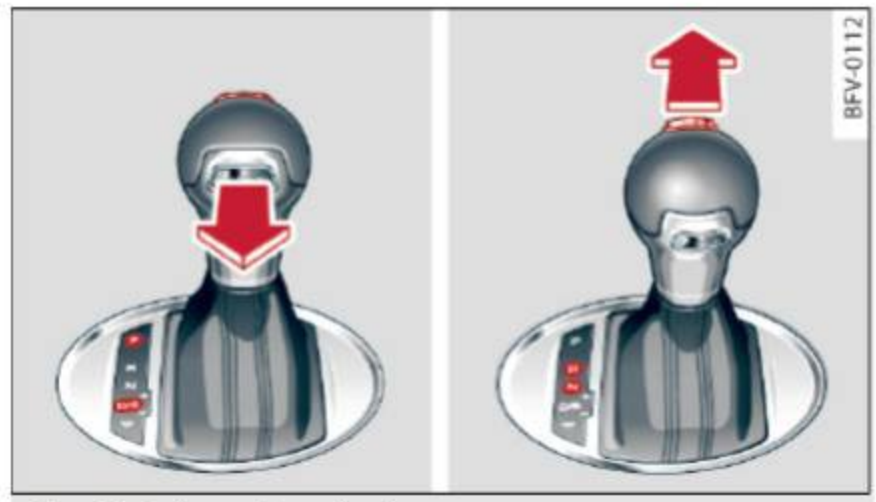


Fig. 64 Selector lever lock

To release the selector lever lock:

▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Press the brake pedal *while* pressing the interlock button.

Automatic shift lock (ASL)

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is switched on. You must press the brake pedal to select another position. You must also press the interlock button if you are moving from the P position. The following message appears in the display when the selector lever is in the P or N position to remind the driver:

To select a gear, please press brake pedal and press lock button on selector lever

The automatic shift lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). At higher speeds, the lock is automatically deactivated in the N position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through N, for example from R to D. This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by "rocking" it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the N position longer than approximately 2 seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed. ▶

Interlock button

The interlock button in the selector lever handle prevents you from moving the selector lever inadvertently while in some selector lever positions. The positions that require the interlock button to be pressed are marked in color in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 64*.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS. ⇨ ⚠ *in Selector lever positions on page 62*.

Tips

– If the selector lever does not engage, there is a malfunction. The engine is disabled to prevent the vehicle from driving off unintentionally. To allow the selector lever to engage again, proceed as follows:
– Briefly press the brake pedal.
– If the vehicle does not move forward or in reverse even though a drive position is selected, proceed as follows:
– >If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may not have engaged the drive position correctly. Press the brake pedal and select the drive position again.
– >If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system malfunction. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance to have the system checked.

Driving tips

The transmission shifts up and down automatically when in the driving gears.



Fig. 65 Section of the center console: selector lever with interlock button

Starting the engine

- ▸ The selector lever must be in the P or the N position. At low temperatures (below 14 °F (-10 °C)), the engine can only be started when the selector lever is in the P position.

Starting from a stop

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press and hold the interlock button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as D ⇨ *page 62* and release the lock button.
- ▸ Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
- ▸ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping temporarily

- ▸ Keep the vehicle stationary using the braking pedal, for example at traffic lights.
- ▸ Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- ▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep inclines ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. In vehicles with a convenience key*, the message **Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors can be locked in P only** appears. A warning tone will also sound.

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position.

Stopping on an incline

- ▸ *Always* press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place and prevent it from "rolling back" ⇨ ⚠. Do **not** try to prevent the vehicle from "rolling back" when a gear is engaged by increasing the engine speed ⇨ (!). ▶

Starting on a hill

- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ With the driving gear selected, press the accelerator pedal carefully. The parking brake will release automatically if your safety belt is fastened.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to manually adjust the gears to the driving conditions ⇨ *page 66*.

When parking on a level surface, simply place the selector lever in the P position. On inclines, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the P position ⇨ *page 60*. This prevents the locking mechanism from being loaded too heavily and will make it easier to move the selector lever out of the P position.

WARNING

- – The vehicle can roll even when the engine is switched off.
- – Unintended vehicle movement can lead to serious injuries.
- – Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the P position.
- – Power is still transferred to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake when the engine is running and the selector lever is in the D, S or R position or “tiptronic” mode is selected.
- – Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
- – Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- – Never engage the R or P selector level positions while driving. It could cause a crash.
- – Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with “tiptronic”.
- – Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving downhill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
- – If you must stop on an incline, always hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake or parking brake to prevent it from rolling back.
- – Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. The indicator light turns on and a message appears ⇨ *page 68* when the clutch is overloaded.
- – If the engine must run while you are working in the engine compartment with the hood open, make sure a gear is not engaged. The selector lever must be firmly in the P position and locked in place and the parking brake must be set ⇨ *page 244*. Otherwise, the vehicle could begin moving when increasing the engine speed, even with the parking brake set.

Note

- – When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and can damage it. Set the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- – Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped and the selector lever is in the N position will damage the automatic transmission because it is not lubricated under those circumstances. ▸

– The transmission can overheat and be damaged under certain driving and traffic conditions such as frequent starts, creeping for a long time, or stop-and-go traffic. When the or indicator light turns on, stop the vehicle at the next opportunity and let the transmission cool ⇨ *page 68*.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped will damage the S tronic transmission because it is not lubricated ⇨ *page 294, Towing with a tow truck*.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Hill descent control

The hill descent control system assists the driver when driving down hills.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the D or S position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the hill. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brakes. Because hill descent control cannot shift down farther than 3rd gear, it may be necessary to shift into tiptronic mode in very steep areas. In this case, shift manually into 1st or 2nd gear in tiptronic mode to use the engine's braking force to relieve the brakes.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with a cruise control system* ⇨ *page 70*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Shifting manually (tiptronic mode)

The tiptronic allows the driver to shift the gears manually.

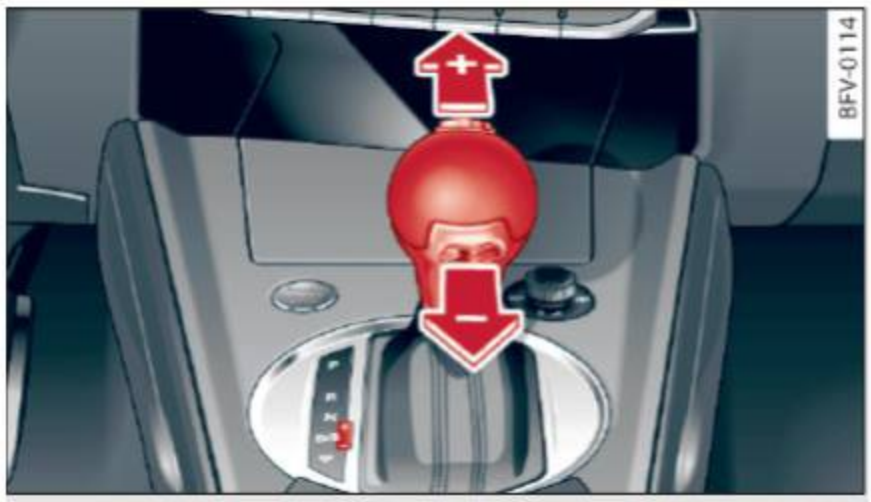


Fig. 66 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever

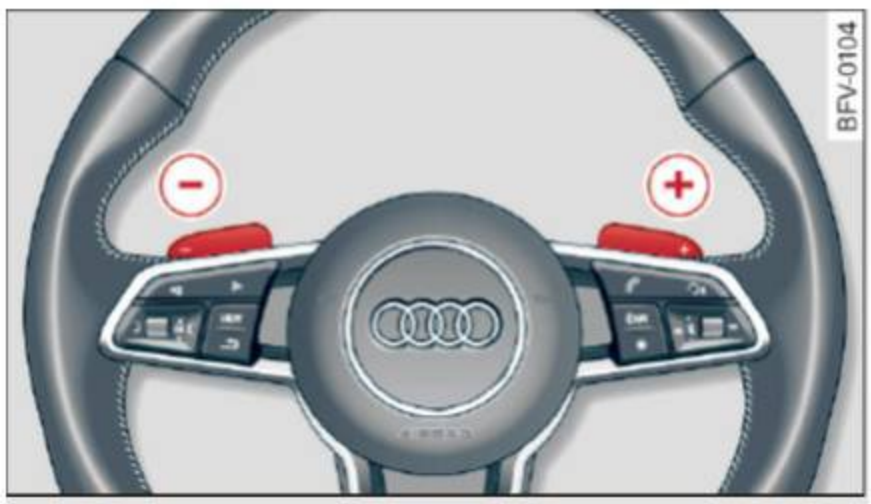


Fig. 67 Steering wheel: manual shifting with the shift paddles*

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into tiptronic mode while stationary and while driving.

- ▸ To shift into tiptronic mode, push the selector lever from the D/S setting to the right in the tiptronic shift gate. Once the transmission has switched modes, the selector lever position **M** is shown in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *page 62, fig. 63*. For example **M4** means the fourth gear is engaged.
- ▸ To shift up a gear, tap the selector lever forward (+) ⇨ *fig. 66*.
- ▸ To shift down a gear, tap the selector lever to back (-).

Shifting with the shift paddles*

You can operate the shift paddles in the D/S or **M** (tiptronic shift gate) selector lever positions.

- ▸ To shift up one gear, tap the shift paddle (+) ⇨ *fig. 67*.

▸ To shift down one gear, tap the shift paddle ⊖.

If the shift paddles are tapped while in the D/S selector lever position, automatic mode switches off briefly. To switch from manually shifting back to automatic shifting immediately, tap the shift paddle ⊕⇨ *fig. 67* for 1 second.

To keep shifting using the shift paddles, move the selector lever to the right out of the D/S position into the tiptronic shift gate.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Tips

– If you shift to the next lowest gear, the transmission will only shift if the engine will not be over-revved.
– With kick-down, the transmission shifts to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine speed.
– tiptronic does not work if the transmission is running in emergency mode.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear and the engine utilizes its full power, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Launch Control-Program

The Launch Control Program enables maximum acceleration.

Requirement: the engine must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

▸ With the engine running, press the OFF button briefly one time [1].
▸ Pull the selector lever back out of the D/S position briefly to select the S position, or press it toward the right into the tiptronic position or select the **Dynamic** driving mode in drive select* ⇨ *page 79*.
▸ Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least 1 second.
▸ At the same time, press the gas pedal all the way down with your right foot until the engine reaches and stays at a high RPM level.
▸ Remove your left foot from the brake.

WARNING

– Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
– Only use Launch Control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
– Please note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.
– Once the vehicle has started moving, press the OFF button briefly to turn the sport mode off.

Tips

– The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the launch control program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period. ▶

[1] The ESC light turns on continuously and the message **Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Reduced stability** appears temporarily in the Infotainment system to indicate that the system was deactivated.

– When accelerating using the launch control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can lead to increased wear.

Emergency mode

In the event of a system malfunction, there is an emergency program.

If all of the selector lever positions are highlighted with a light background in the Infotainment display, there is a system malfunction and the S tronic transmission is running in the emergency program. The vehicle can still be driven in emergency mode, but only with reduced speed and not in all gears. In some cases, the vehicle **cannot drive in reverse**.

Note

If the transmission runs in emergency mode, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: malfunction! Please stop vehicle and shift to P

There is a malfunction in the transmission. Park the vehicle securely and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please stop vehicle

The transmission is too hot and can become damaged. Stop and let the transmission cool with the engine running (at idle) in the P selector lever position. Then the indicator light and the message turn off, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If the indicator light and the driver message do not turn off, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You may continue driving. No reverse gear

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You may continue driving in D until engine off

Drive the vehicle away from moving traffic and park. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style

Continue driving moderately. When the indicator light turns off, you can continue driving normally.

Transmission: Please press brake pedal and select gear again

If the transmission malfunctions because the temperature is too high, a message appears when the transmission is cooled.

Selector lever emergency release

If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.



Fig. 68 Selector lever: removing the cover

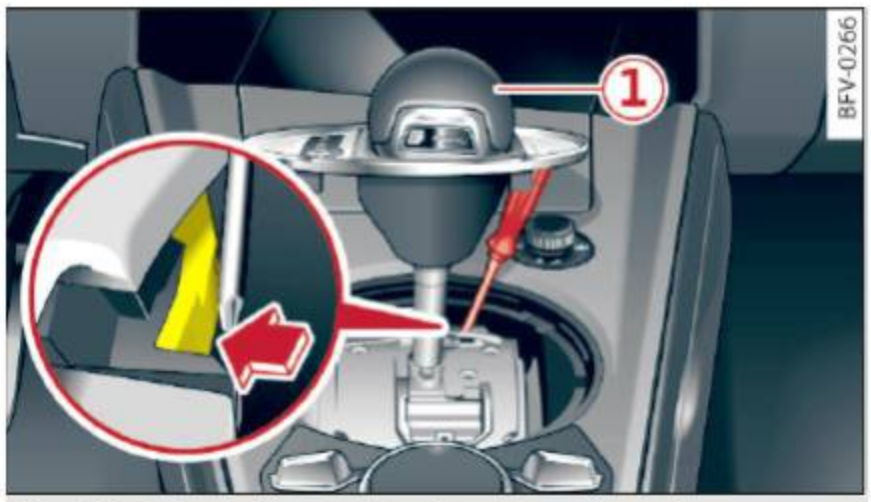


Fig. 69 Selector lever: using the emergency release to move out of the Park position

This section describes using the selector lever emergency release in left-hand drive vehicles.

The emergency release mechanism is located in the right area under the selector lever shift gate. Using the emergency release can be complicated. We recommend contacting an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance, if necessary.

The screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit located in the luggage compartment is needed to for the emergency release ⇨ *page 281*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.

Removing the selector lever cover

- ▸ Set the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ ⚠ to secure your vehicle from rolling.
- ▸ Insert the flat side of the screwdriver sideways in the slot near the shift cover and pry the shift cover up ⇨ *fig. 68*.
- ▸ Carefully pull the shift cover upward by hand and fold it over the shifter knob ⇨ *fig. 69*.

Selector lever emergency release

- ▸ Press and hold the yellow release button with the screwdriver ⇨ *fig. 69*.
- ▸ Press the lock button on the selector lever ① and move the lever into the N position.
- ▸ Clip the shift cover back into the shift gate after using the emergency release.

If the vehicle must be pushed or towed due to a power failure (for example, the battery is dead), the selector lever must first be moved to the N position using the emergency release mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

Only move the selector lever out of the P position when the parking brake is set. If that does not work, secure the vehicle with the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle could start to move unintentionally when the selector lever is moved out of the P position.

Trailer towing

General information

Your Audi TT Coupe is not designed to tow a trailer.

Towing a trailer with your Audi TT Coupe is not recommended and can cause damage to the car. Damaged caused by towing a trailer is not covered by your Audi Warranty.

Assist

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 262*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle road speed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

Speed warning system

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay below a specified maximum speed that can be set, changed or deleted in the Infotainment system.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. A warning tone will sound as soon as your speed exceeds the stored value slightly. The (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light and a message appear in the instrument cluster display at the same time. The (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light and the message turn off when the vehicle speed drops below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Setting the warning threshold

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning** > **Manual**.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 15 mph (20 km/h).



Fig. 70 Operating lever: cruise control system

- To switch on the system, pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 70*.
- Drive at the speed to be maintained.
- To store the speed, press the button (A).

The stored speed and the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light are displayed in the instrument cluster.

The speed is maintained by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control system is in operation. You are always responsible for your ▶

speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
– For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones.
– Please note that unconsciously "resting" your foot on the accelerator pedal prevents the cruise control from braking. This is because pressing the accelerator pedal overrides the cruise control system.
– If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The rest of the cruise control system functions remain active as long as the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light is on.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Changing speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- ▸ To increase/decrease the speed in increments, briefly **tap** the lever toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 70, fig. 70* up/down to the first level.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed in increments, **tap** the lever toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 70, fig. 70* up/down to the second level.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever in the ⊕ / ⊖ direction until the desired speed is reached.

Overriding the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, for example if you want to pass someone. The speed you set earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

However, if you are exceeding the stored speed by a considerable amount for a long time, the cruise control system will temporarily switch off. The CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the stored speed is maintained.

Preselecting the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can pre-select your desired speed when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Pull the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 70, fig. 70*.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed, tap the lever toward ⊕/⊖.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once you are on the expressway, activate the cruise control system by pulling the lever into position ①.

Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Temporary deactivation

- ▸ Press the brake pedal, or
- ▸ Press the lever toward ② (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 70, fig. 70*.

Switching off completely

- ▸ Press the lever into position ② (clicked into place), or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

The speed you stored will be maintained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the stored speed, release the brake or clutch pedal and pull the lever to position ①.

Switching the ignition off will erase the stored speed. ▶

8S0012721BB

WARNING

You should only resume the stored speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you can increase the risk of an accident.

Audi active lane assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is ready for operation when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways and so it only activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) (depending on the market).

Applies to vehicles with side assist*: if you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to vehicles without side assist*: the system does not warn when it is ready if you activate the turn signal before crossing the lane marker line. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

WARNING

– The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
– The system can assist the driver in keeping the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
– Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
– There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
– Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
– The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray light shining into the camera or by dirt on the window. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.
– In certain situations where visibility is low, the vehicle may switch internally from “early” to “late” steering correction [1].
– Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, an inclined roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
– For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

1) The corrective steering function is not available in all markets.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 71 Turn signal lever: button for active lane assist

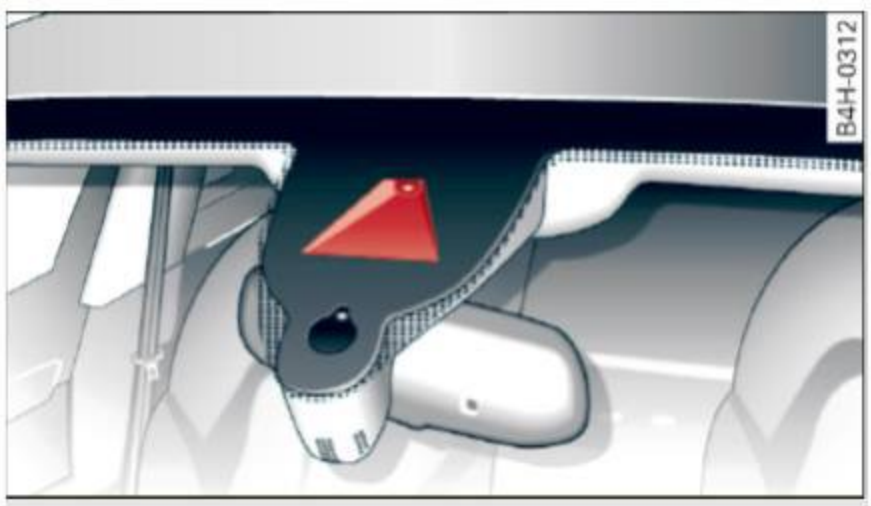


Fig. 72 Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

► Press the button ⇨ *fig. 71* to switch the system on and off. The or indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off.

Indicator lights

Ready: the indicator light turns on when the system is ready for use. The system can now be operated.

Not ready: the indicator light turns on if the system is switched on but is inoperable. This may be due to the following reasons:

– There is no lane marker line.
– The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or lighting).
– The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h) (the speed may vary depending on your country).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The curve is too narrow.
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.

Tips

– Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 72* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 275*.
– In certain markets: if the system is switched on, it will switch on automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Indicator in Infotainment display

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 73 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and providing warnings

You can call up the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 19*.

Green line(s)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
Red line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane ⇨ *fig. 73*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly.
Gray line(s)	Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to give warning

Messages in Infotainment display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted. See owner's manual

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if: ▶

– The camera field of view ⇨ *page 73, fig. 72* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
– The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
– The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

Audi active lane assist: malfunction! See owner's manual

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering!

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. If this is the case, active lane assist does not switch off, but it is “not ready” to provide a warning. The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane. However, you are responsible for driving the vehicle and must steer it yourself.

Adjusting the steering time and vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

You can adjust individual active lane assist settings in the Infotainment system.

Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**

Steering time[1)]

Early: in this setting, the corrective steering happens continuously to help keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Late: in this setting, the system provides corrective steering just before a vehicle wheel touches a detected lane marker line.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional vibration warning in the steering wheel on or off.

Tips

In certain markets: your settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key in use.

Lap timer

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Lap timer

You can measure and analyze lap times with the lap timer in the display. The time is measured in minutes, seconds and 1/10 seconds. With lap times longer than 60 minutes, the hour is also shown and the display of 1/10 seconds is removed.

The time measurement on an individual lap ends after 99 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds. A new lap starts automatically after that.

The measurement ends after a maximum of 30 laps. You can then evaluate the lap times or start a new time measurement.

You can control the lap timer using the controls on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 75*.

WARNING

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only ▶

1) The corrective steering function is not available in all markets.

use the functions such as the lap timer in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Tips

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

Opening the lap timer and measuring time

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer



Fig. 74 Multifunction steering wheel: controls



Fig. 75 Instrument cluster: lap timer

Opening the lap timer

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Lap times**
- Turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 74* until **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** ⇨ *fig. 75* appears.
- Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the selection.

Timing laps

- To measure the lap time, press the thumbwheel Ⓐ again while on the **New lap** menu item. This starts timing the next lap at the same time. The last time measurement moves up to the top line ①. The current lap time is in the center line in area ③.

As long as the symbol is green during the current lap time measurement, the current time is faster than your best time to date. If the symbol is red, the current time is slower ②.

Displaying split time and pausing timing

- To display a split time, turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ until **Split time** appears in line ④. Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the selection. The split time appears for approximately 10 seconds in area ③. The timing of the current lap continues.

If you would like to insert a pause immediately after the split time, first press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the menu item **Press OK to go back**.

- To insert a pause, turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ until **Pause** appears in line ④. Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the selection. The pause symbol appears in area ③.
- To continue timing, press the thumbwheel Ⓐ.

If timing is paused, you can continue it later even if you switch the ignition off.

Meaning of the indicator in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 75*:

①	Display of last recorded time
②	Symbols: - : start of time recording - : slowest recorded time - : fastest recorded time - : split time - : pause
③	Current time measurement
④	Menu: - Start lap 1 by driving off (start) - Start by driving off (start) - New lap (start another lap) - Split time (time within section of the route) - Pause (interrupts measurement) - Cancel lap - Reset lap times (all values are deleted)

Evaluating recorded times or resetting

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can evaluate the fastest, slowest and average lap times.

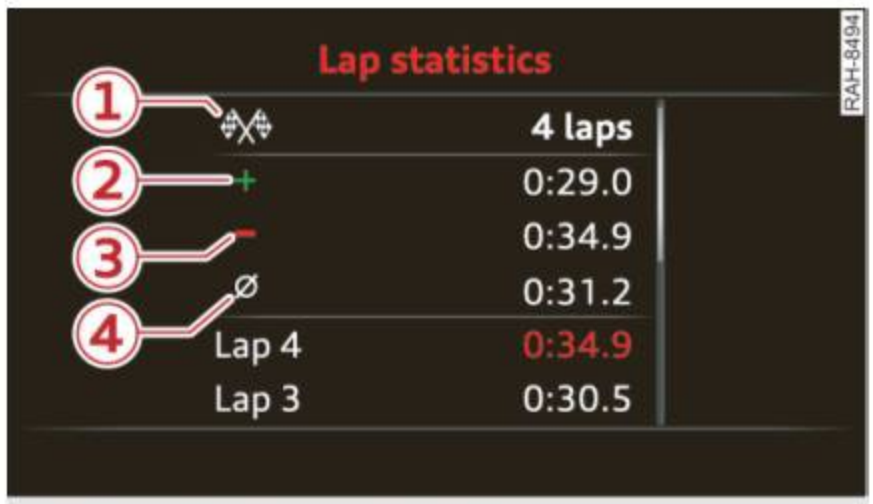


Fig. 76 Instrument cluster: lap timer

After evaluating the lap times, you can continue the current timing round or start over, meaning start lap 1 again.

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Lap statistics**. The display shows the fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "–" and the average lap time "Ø". Turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ downward or upward to display the individual lap times.
- ▸ Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to resume the paused lap timing.
- ▸ Press the left control button on the multifunction steering wheel to reset the timer to zero. Then turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ and select the desired setting by moving the cursor (red frame). Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the selection.
- ▸ Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to restart the lap timer for a new lap timing, if needed.
- ▸ Press the MENU button to exit the lap timer.

Evaluation legend ⇨ *fig. 76*:

①	All laps
②	+: fastest lap time
③	–: slowest lap time
④	Ø: average lap time

Tips

– Saved lap times cannot be individually deleted from the total results.

– The saved lap timer values will remain after switching the ignition off.

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist



Fig. 77 Sensor detection range

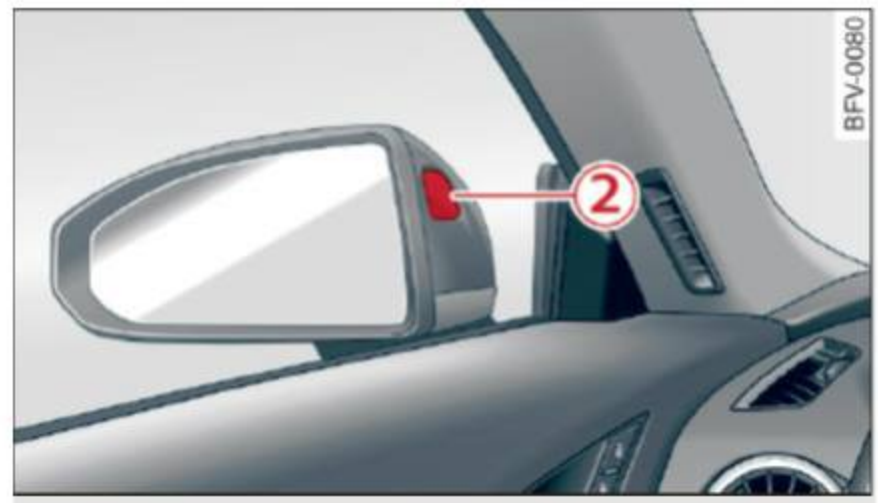


Fig. 78 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 77*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 78* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim. ▸

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If you activate the turn signal, side assist *warns* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the respective mirror blinks brightly. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the exterior mirrors and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 78*.

Tips

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 78*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

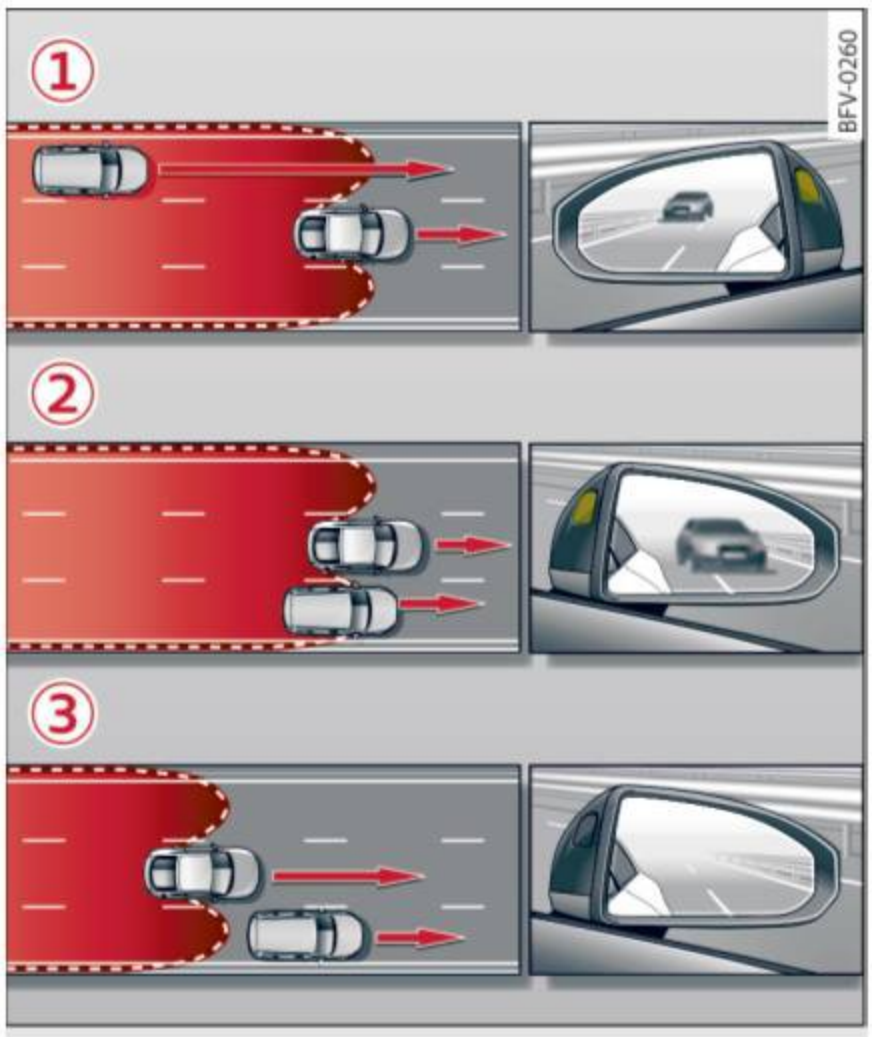


Fig. 79 Driving situations



Fig. 80 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors (example)

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

① Approaching vehicles

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

② Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

③ Vehicles you are passing

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

– If the lanes are narrow or if your are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the ▶

system may have detected the vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
– In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 80* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because they will impair the function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 275*.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
– In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – If vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.
– Audi side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions, which can increase the risk of accidents.
– Please note that side assist only displays approaching vehicles or vehicles in your blind spot if your vehicle is traveling at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– In certain situations, the system may not work or its function may be limited. For example:
  – The display may not turn on at the right time if vehicles are approaching or passing very quickly.
  – In poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow or fog.
  – In very wide lanes, in tight curves or when there are slopes in the roadway, vehicles in the neighboring lanes may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 304*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The system can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**

If the system is activated, the displays in the exterior mirrors will turn on briefly when the ignition is switched on.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist** ▶

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage.

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If the side assist switches off automatically, a message appears in the Infotainment system display.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. Sensor vision restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The radar sensors' vision is affected. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 77, fig. 80*.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

Side assist cannot be switched on at this time because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: malfunction! Please contact Service

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi drive select (drive settings)

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select from three modes, **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic**, using the drive select button in the center console or by using the Infotainment system. This allows you to switch between a sporty and a comfortable driving mode, for example. In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine setting with light steering.

WARNING

Using Audi drive select incorrectly can lead to collisions, other accidents and serious injuries.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The vehicle setup in each mode depends on the vehicle's features. However, the engine and steering are always affected.

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements.

Adaptive dampers (Audi magnetic ride)*

The adaptive dampers use sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, road surface, driving speed, and load. With drive ▶

select, you can adjust the adaptive dampers to sporty (dynamic), comfortable (comfort) or balanced (auto).

Steering

The power steering adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Torque distribution

The sport differential distributes the drive power to the rear axle based on the situation. The distribution of power varies depending on the selected mode from moderate (**Comfort**) to sporty (**Dynamic**). The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering.

Engine sound*

The engine sound adapts to the current mode and can be subtle to sporty.

Tips

In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can choose between comfort, auto, dynamic and individual.



Fig. 81 Center console: drive select button



Fig. 82 Infotainment: drive select

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Audi drive select**.
- Select the desired setting by moving the cursor (red frame).

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - results in a comfort-oriented vehicle calibration

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 81*.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to reduce the risk of an accident.

Adjusting the Individual mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

- ▸ Press the button ⇨ *page 80, fig. 81* > **Individual** > right control button, or
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button>**Audi drive select** > **Individual** > right control button

After you have closed the settings, you are automatically driving in the **Individual*** driving mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

Systems	comfort	auto	dynamic
Engine and **Transmission**	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Adaptive dampers*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	balanced	sporty
quattro	balanced	balanced	sporty

Tips

Your **Individual*** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Parking systems

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system/parking system plus

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **rear parking system** is an audible parking aid that warns you of obstacles *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 83*.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 83*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park or maneuver ⇨ *page 84*. The parking system plus functions are also available ⇨ *page 83*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or leaving a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not obstructed by stickers, deposits or other materials. If they are, the sensor function could be impaired. For additional information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 275*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - Objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Keep enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass.
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles.
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust.
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume of the signals.
- What appears in the display is slightly delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for park aid to operate.

Rear parking system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system

The rear parking system is an audible parking aid.

Description

There is a sensor in the rear bumper cover. If these detect an obstacle, audible signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 275*.

The range at which the sensors begin to measure is approximately:

rear	side	3 ft (0.90 m)
	center	5.2 ft (1.60 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue backing up ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 82*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Activating

The rear parking assist activates automatically when the reverse gear is engaged. A brief confirmation tone will sound.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

Parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

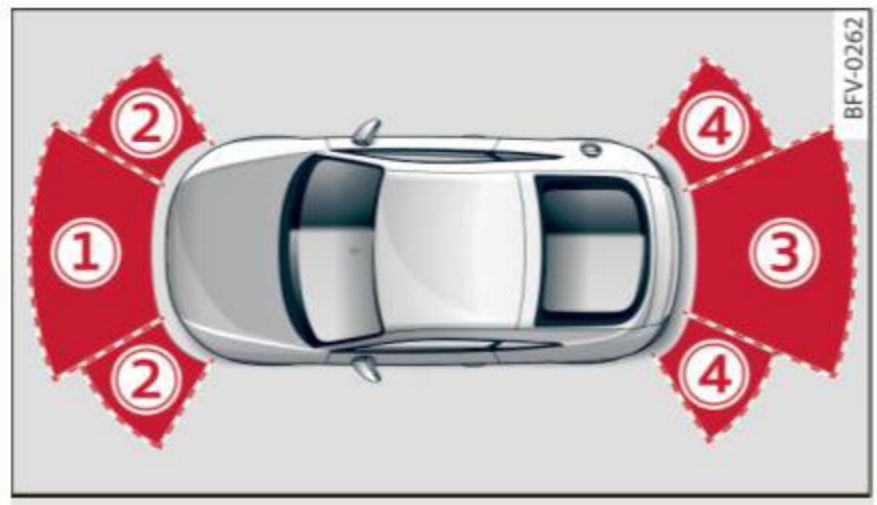


Fig. 83 Illustration:

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 275*.

The display field begins approximately at:

①	4 ft (1.20 m)
②	3 ft (0.90 m)
③	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
④	3 ft (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 82*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 84 Center console: parking aid button



Fig. 85 optical distance display

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 84*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Activating automatically

The parking aid is activated automatically at speeds less than 6 mph (10 km/h) and when approaching an obstacle from approximately 3.1 ft (95 cm) away. There are audible signals when approximately 1.6 ft (50 cm) away from the obstacle. If you press the P button to switch the parking aid off, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

– The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
– The ignition is switch off and back on again.
– The parking brake is set and then released.
– The selector lever must be in the P position.

Segments in the visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle (vehicles with parking system plus*) ⇨ *fig. 85* help you to determine the distance between your vehicle and an obstacle. The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 82*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

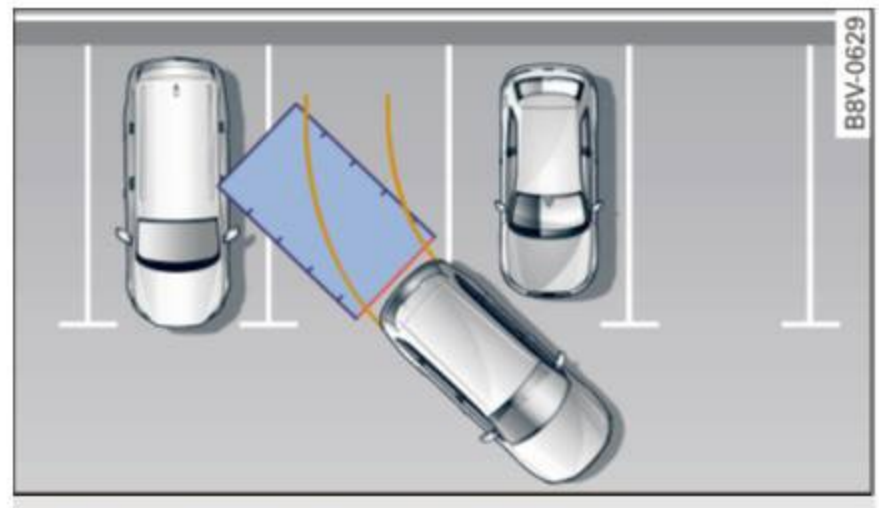


Fig. 86 Diagram: lines to aid in parking

The rearview camera helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

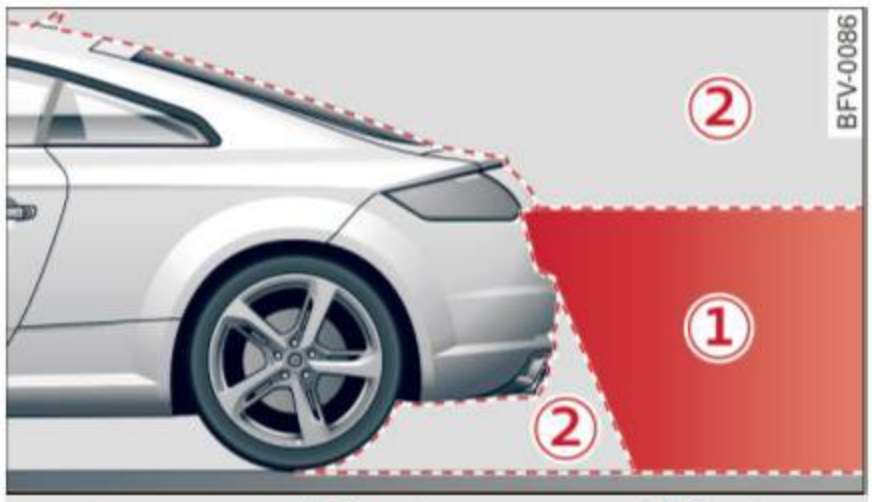


Fig. 87 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 88 Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 88* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can impair the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 275*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 87*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are outside of this area ② are not displayed.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 82*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
- In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  - For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
  - If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  - If driven toward protruding objects.
  - If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 82*.
- The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on

- ▸ Shift into reverse, or
- ▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 84, fig. 84*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on. ▶

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Tips

– The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.
– You can change the volume of the signals and the display ⇨ *page 86*.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

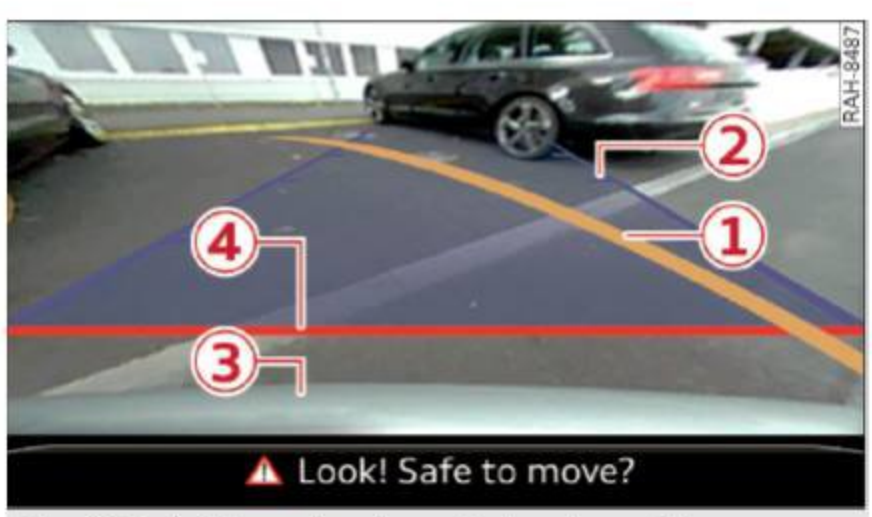


Fig. 89 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space



Fig. 90 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

- Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
- The orange orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 89*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.
- While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 85*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 85*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**.

Warning tones

Front volume - volume for the front area

Rear volume - volume for the rear area

Entertainment fader - when the parking system is turned on, the volume of the audio/video source is lowered.

The newly selected level is demonstrated briefly by the sound generator.

Tips

The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking system/parking system plus

Rear park assist: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

Front park assist: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

Park assist: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected ▶

There is a system malfunction if the LED in the P button blinks when switching on the system. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse. As long as the error is active, you can display the error messages in the second tab of the driver information system.

Parking system plus*

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas (1) and (2) ⇨ *page 83, fig. 83* are shown. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas (3) and (4) are shown.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Intelligent Technology

Electronic stabilization control (ESC)

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as the vehicle oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The vehicle is stabilized by applying the brakes or reducing engine torque. When ESC engages, the  indicator light blinks in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

EDL applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves. The applicable system may not activate when driving in wet or snowy conditions.

WARNING

- The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
- Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
- Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

- The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
- You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on and off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.



Fig. 91 Upper center console, OFF button

The ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level selected, the ESC stabilization function is limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button briefly.	Press and hold the OFF button longer than 3 seconds.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	and ESC OFF* turn on.	turns off or and ESC OFF* turn off.
Messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): on**

WARNING

You should only switch sport mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and road conditions permit.

– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.
– There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

Tips

When the cruise control system is switched on, ESC/ASR cannot be switched off or sport mode cannot be switched on.

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be “broken in” first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Wear

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. This is especially true if you are driving frequently in the city and on curves or with a sporty driving style. ▶

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be "dried" first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This action, which is not felt by the driver, happens at regular intervals and ensures a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied.

Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and to dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

Brake system malfunction

if you notice that the brake pedal travel has *suddenly* increased, then a brake circuit in the dual-circuit brake system may have malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected. On the way there, drive with reduced speed and keep in mind that you will need a longer distance to stop and you will need to press the brake pedal harder.

Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored.

Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.
- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users. This increases the risk of an accident.
- On steep slopes, reduce the speed and select a lower gear or lower selector lever position. Drive as little as possible while pressing the brake pedal and avoid putting your left foot on the brake pedal while driving. This could cause the brakes to overheat and impair the efficiency of the brakes.
- Do not let the brakes "grind" by always keeping your foot on the brake pedal. This can cause the brakes to overheat, increase wear and increase braking distance unnecessarily.
- Certain weather and operating conditions such as driving through water, driving in heavy rain or driving after washing your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the brakes. In the winter, ice may build up on the brake pads, rotors and drums. Check these components by braking carefully. Applying the brakes carefully several times dries the brakes and removes ice build-up.
- The efficiency of the brakes can also be impaired by driving for long stretches on roads covered with salt without using the brakes. You can remove salt deposits from the ▶

brake rotors and pads by carefully applying the brakes several times.
– If the front spoiler is damaged or you install another spoiler, make sure the front wheel brakes are ventilated properly. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat, which reduces their effectiveness.
– Failure of a brake circuit impairs braking performance, which increases braking distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed it to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
– If the brake booster is not working, you will have to press much harder on the brake pedal to compensate for the lack of the booster.

Note

– Never let the brakes "rub" by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and relieves the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Tips

– If the brake booster is not working, you must press the brake pedal with much more force than normal.
– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the front wheels is not interrupted. Otherwise the brake system can become too hot.

Electromechanical steering

The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You may continue driving

If the indicator light turns on, the steering wheel may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Also see ⇨ *page 88, Electronic stabilization control (ESC)*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on ▶

snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good *forward* motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all season tires on *all four* wheels, because this will improve the *braking* effect.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 270, Snow chains*.

Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid using tires with different tread depths ⇨ *page 262, New tires or wheels*.

Offroad vehicle?

Your Audi is not an offroad vehicle - there is not enough ground clearance. For this reason, avoid difficult terrain.

⚠ WARNING

- Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can "hydroplane" if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, pay attention to the road conditions regardless of your speed.

Rear spoiler

Applies to: vehicles with retractable rear spoiler

The extendable rear spoiler increases driving stability.



Fig. 92 Center console: button for the rear spoiler

The rear spoiler retracts and extends. It can be activated in various operating modes (manual mode or automatic mode).

Automatic mode (normal operation)

- Automatic extension: the rear spoiler will automatically extend when speeds exceed approximately 75 mph (120 km/h)
- Automatic retraction: the rear spoiler will automatically retract when speeds decrease to under approximately 50 mph (80 km/h).

Manual mode

- Extending manually: briefly tap the ⇨ *fig. 92* button to fully extend the rear spoiler.
- Retracting manually: when driving at speeds below approximately 10 mph (20 km/h), press and hold the button to retract the rear spoiler. When at speeds between 10 mph (20 km/h) and 75 mph (120 km/h), the rear spoiler will completely retract when you tap the button.

Indicator lights

/ Rear spoiler: malfunction! Please contact Service

The rear spoiler may not have extended due to a malfunction. This could change the vehicle's driving characteristics at high speeds. Do not drive faster than 85 mph (140 km/h). Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. The color of the indicator light depends on the vehicle speed.

WARNING

Driving at higher speeds without the rear spoiler deployed can impair handling characteristics, making the vehicle harder to control.

– Always make sure that the spoiler is deployed when driving at speeds over 85 mph (140 km/h). If the rear spoiler warning/indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on, the rear spoiler may not have deployed.
– Never drive at speeds higher than 85 mph (140 km/h) if the spoiler is not deployed. Have the spoiler inspected as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Always obey speed limits and other traffic laws.

WARNING

Improper operation of the rear spoiler can cause crushing injuries.

– Always make sure that nobody, especially children, is in the way when the rear spoiler is deployed or retracted.

Note

– Never push on the vehicle on the rear spoiler. This could cause damage.
– To prevent damage to the rear spoiler do not lean or place anything on it.
– Only operate the rear spoiler manually when the luggage compartment lid is close and the rear spoiler moving parts are not blocked. Otherwise, damage could occur.

Tips

Clean the rear spoiler compartment every 2 to 3 months. To function correctly, the rear spoiler must be free of ice, snow and leaves.

Energy management

The starting ability is optimized

The energy management system manages the electrical energy distribution and optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

When a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long time, the vehicle battery is drained by equipment (for example, the immobilizer). In certain circumstances, there could may not be enough energy to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

The energy management system Is made up of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management** and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis determines the vehicle battery charge level. The sensors determine the battery voltage, the battery current, and the battery temperature. The current charge level and the performance of the vehicle battery are determined based on this.

Idling current management

The idling current management decreases the energy used while parked. With the engine switched off, it manages the energy distribution to the different electrical components. Data from the battery diagnosis is taken into account for this.

Depending on the vehicle battery charge level, electrical equipment is switched off one item after the other to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the starting ability.

Dynamic energy management

While driving, dynamic energy management distributes the appropriate amount of energy to the electrical equipment. It controls the battery charge level so that the amount of energy is not ▶

greater than the amount being generated in order to maintain an optimal vehicle battery charge level.

Tips

– Energy management cannot overcome the laws of physics. Note that the charge level and length of the vehicle battery life are limited.
– When the starting ability is jeopardized, the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 13*.

What you should know

Maintaining the starting ability is the highest priority.

A lot of stress is placed on the vehicle battery when driving short distances, during city driving, and at cold times of the year. A lot of energy is used but little is generated. It is also critical when the engine is not running but electrical equipment is switched on. In this case, energy is used but none is generated.

In situations like this, energy management will actively regulate the distribution of energy.

Long periods without use

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time. Some convenience functions such as opening with the remote control key may not be available. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

The vehicle battery will drain if you use Infotainment functions such as listening to the radio while the engine is switched off.

If the vehicle's ability to start may be impaired by the energy use, a message will appear in the Infotainment system display. The message indicates that the system will switch off automatically soon. If you would like to continue using the functions, you must start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated while driving, the vehicle battery can drain. This can happen if little energy is generated but much is used, and the charge level of the vehicle battery is not optimal.

To restore the balance of energy, components that require large amounts of energy are temporarily scaled back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat heating* or rear window defroster is not working, then it has been temporarily reduced or switched off. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

In addition, you may notice that the idle speed has slightly increased. That is normal and no cause for concern. By increasing the idling speed, the additional required energy will be generated and the vehicle battery will be charged.

Information about data recorded by vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is not equipped with a crash data recorder. This device is installed by some vehicle manufacturers to record data about crashes so that it can be analyzed later. Crash data recorders are also called “Event Data Recorders (EDR)”.

In some legal jurisdictions, it is not permitted to access or download data recorded by pre-installed crash data recorders in order to evaluate a crash without clear consent of the vehicle owner.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a crash data recorder. However it does contain a variety of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as engine function, exhaust treatment or airbags and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record vehicle data during normal driving for diagnosis and repair purposes. The recording capability of the electronic control modules is limited to data only - no sound is recorded. If the control module detects a system malfunction or other change in status, a very limited amount of data is recorded ▶

for an extremely small period of time. Data that is recorded in such a case may include vehicle speed, driving direction, the load on the brakes and head restraints and performance in the event of an accident or other change in status. The stored data can only be read or downloaded with special devices.

8S0012721BB

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Tips

Certain functions are not available while driving.

Introduction

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various systems for communication, navigation and entertainment in your Audi. You can operate the MMI using the MMI control panel, the multifunction steering wheel or the voice recognition system*.*

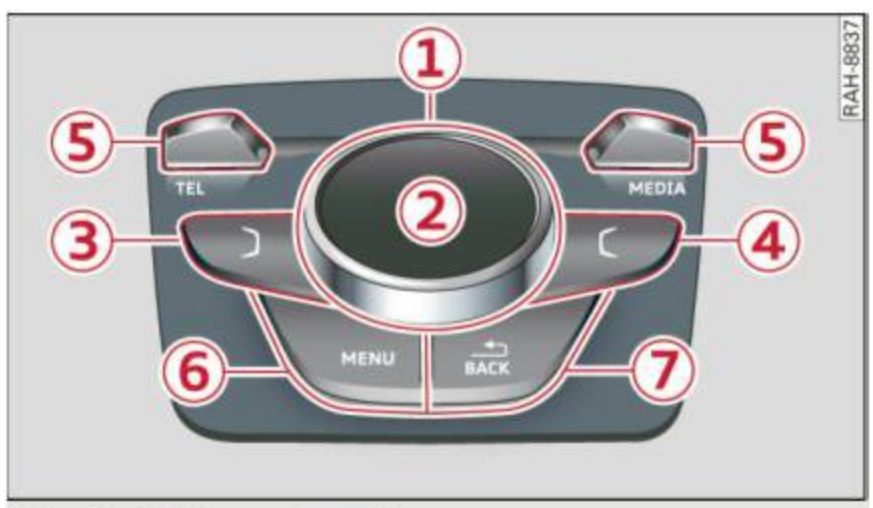


Fig. 93 MMI control panel

MMI control panel overview

① Control knob with joystick function . . 97
② MMI touch control pad* 99
③ Left control button 98
④ Right control button 98
⑤ Buttons for opening menus directly 97
⑥ MENU button 97
⑦ BACK button 97

MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Operating



Fig. 94 MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Switching the MMI on/off:

The MMI can be manually switched on and off.

– **Switching on manually**: press the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94* briefly. **Or**: press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* or one of the buttons to directly open the menus ⑤ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93*.

– **Switching off manually**: press and hold the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94* until the MMI switches off. If the MMI has been switched off manually, it does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

Additional functions:

– **Adjusting the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94*.

– **Muting (mute)**: briefly press the On/Off knob.

– **Selecting the previous/next function (for example, a radio station/track)**: briefly press the On/Off knob toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.

– **Fast forwarding/rewinding (for example, tracks)**: press the On/Off knob longer toward the right ⏭ or left ⏮.

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as ▶

police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low.

MMI operation

Selecting and confirming a function

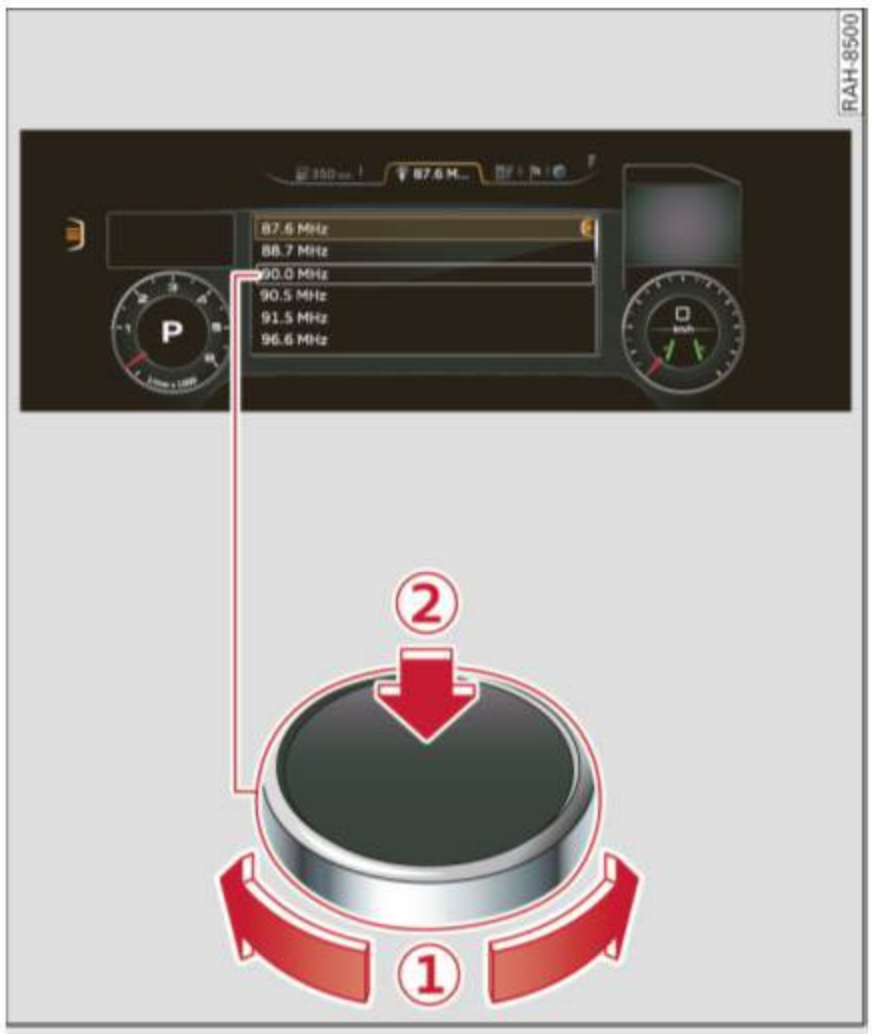


Fig. 95 Operating the control knob

Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

- **Selecting a function**: turn the control knob (1) ⇨ *fig. 95* to the desired function (such as selecting a frequency).
- **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob (2) ⇨ *fig. 95*.

Returning to functions at higher levels

- Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93*.

Opening the main menu/menu



Fig. 96 Main menu

Opening the main menu

- Press the MENU button (6) ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93*. The MMI menus (such as **Radio**) are displayed ⇨ *fig. 96*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Opening a menu directly

- Press the applicable button to directly open the menus (5) ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* in the direction of the desired menu (such as RADIO). Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Opening the selection/options menu with the control buttons

Using the selection menu, you can open additional functions within a menu item (such as Radio).

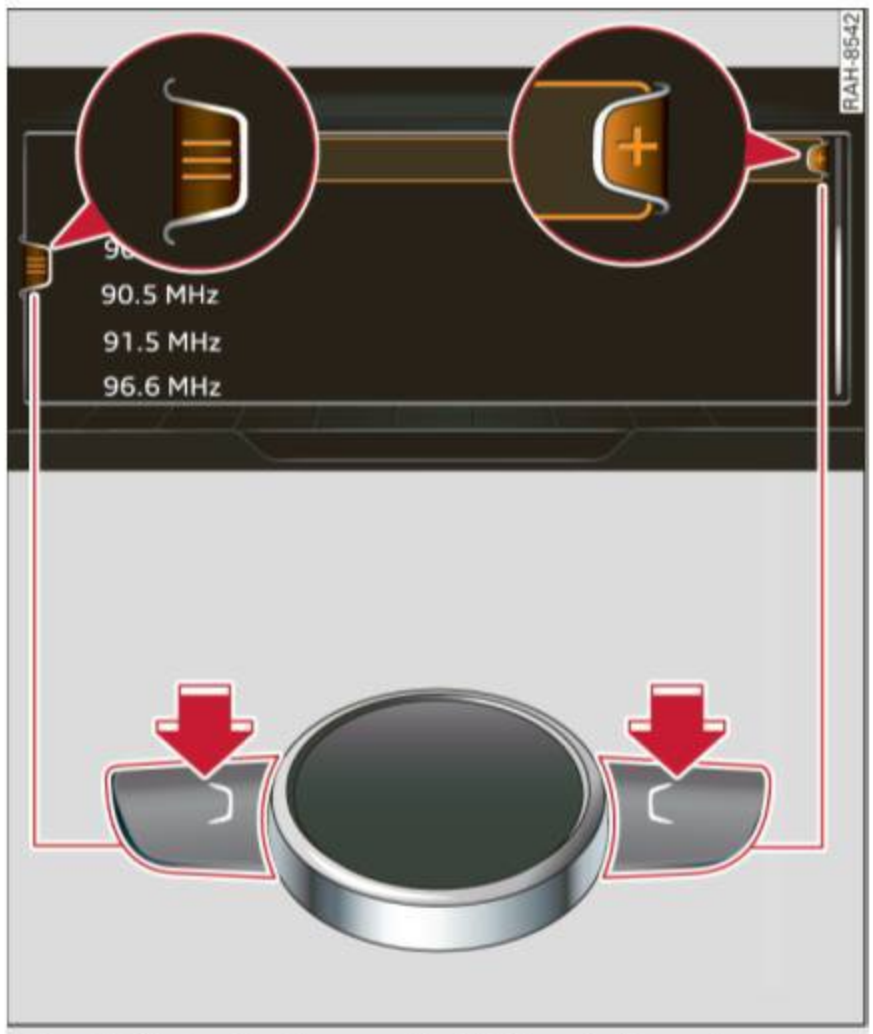


Fig. 97 Control buttons on the MMI control panel

Selection menu: through the selection menu, you can open additional functions within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the selection menu symbol must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 97*.

Opening/closing the selection menu: press the left control button ⇨ *fig. 97*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Options menu: using the options menu, you can select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the options menu symbol [+] must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 97*.

Opening/closing the options menu: press the right control button ⇨ *fig. 97*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Information about paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control knob > **FM**.

Following the path

▸ Press the RADIO button.
▸ Press the left control button.
▸ Turn the control knob to the **FM** menu item to select it.
▸ Press the control knob to confirm the selected **FM** menu item.
▸ The selected and confirmed function is executed. In this example, the **FM** frequency band is set.

MMI touch

MMI touch control pad

You can enter data using handwriting recognition on the MMI touch control pad.



Fig. 98 Entering a navigation destination ▶

The MMI touch control pad (2) ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* is located on the control knob (1) ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93*.

Entering letters, numbers and symbols

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

The MMI touch allows you to enter data on the MMI touch control pad using handwriting recognition.



Fig. 99 Display when MMI touch is active

Requirement: it must be possible to enter text or numbers and the symbol (1) ⇨ *fig. 99* must appear in the Infotainment system display.

- **Initial entry**: write an individual upper case or lower case letter or number/symbol on the MMI touch control pad using your finger. A symbol that is recognized clearly by the system is displayed in the Infotainment system display (1) ⇨ *page 98, fig. 98*, confirmed with an audible signal if necessary, and transferred to the input field.
- **Entering spaces**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right.
- **Deleting characters**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
- **Deleting characters quickly**: move your finger quickly across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
- **Selecting the input suggestion**: press the control knob.
- **Switching directly to the results list**: turn the control knob to the right
- **Opening the speller**: select the right control button > **Open speller**. Text or numbers are entered using the speller ⇨ *page 102*.

Moving the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

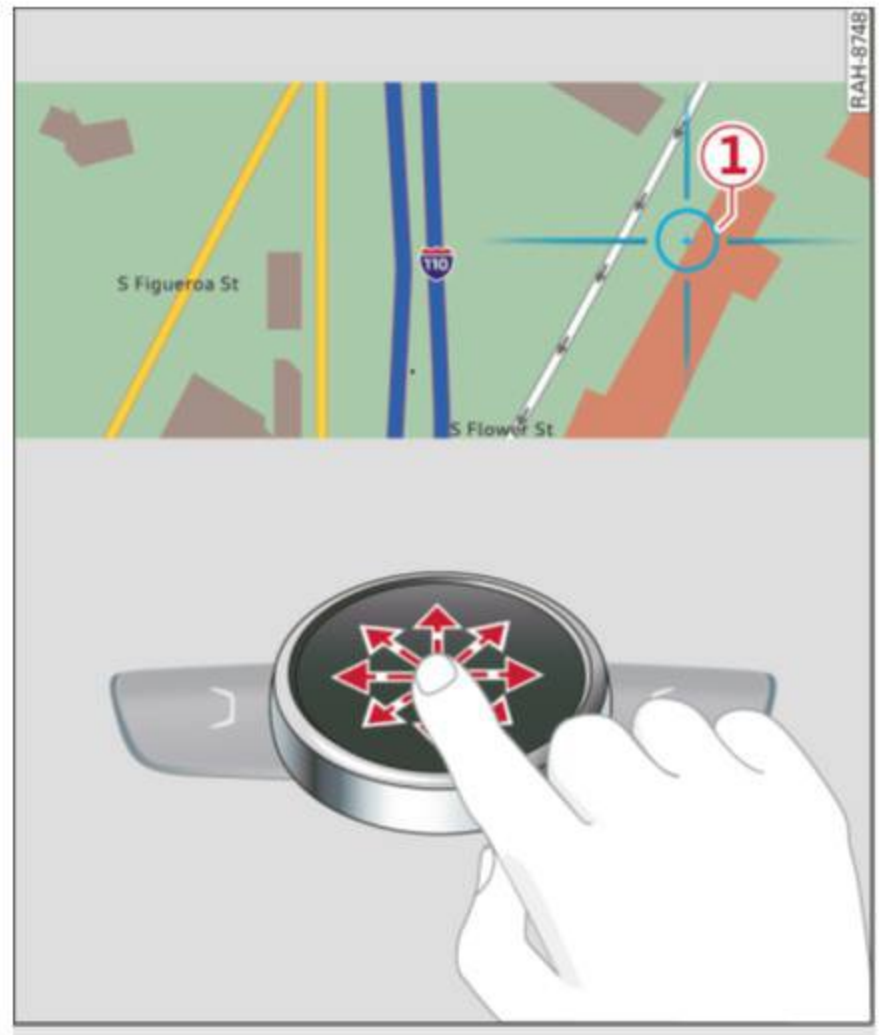


Fig. 100 Moving the crosshairs

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

- **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs (1) ⇨ *fig. 100*. Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* to hide the crosshairs.
- **Moving the crosshairs on a map**: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using your finger on the MMI touch control pad.
- **Moving the crosshairs quickly**: when the crosshairs are visible (1) ⇨ *fig. 100*, slide your finger quickly across the MMI touch control pad in the desired direction ⇨ *fig. 100*. The crosshairs will come to a stop after several seconds.

Moving the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

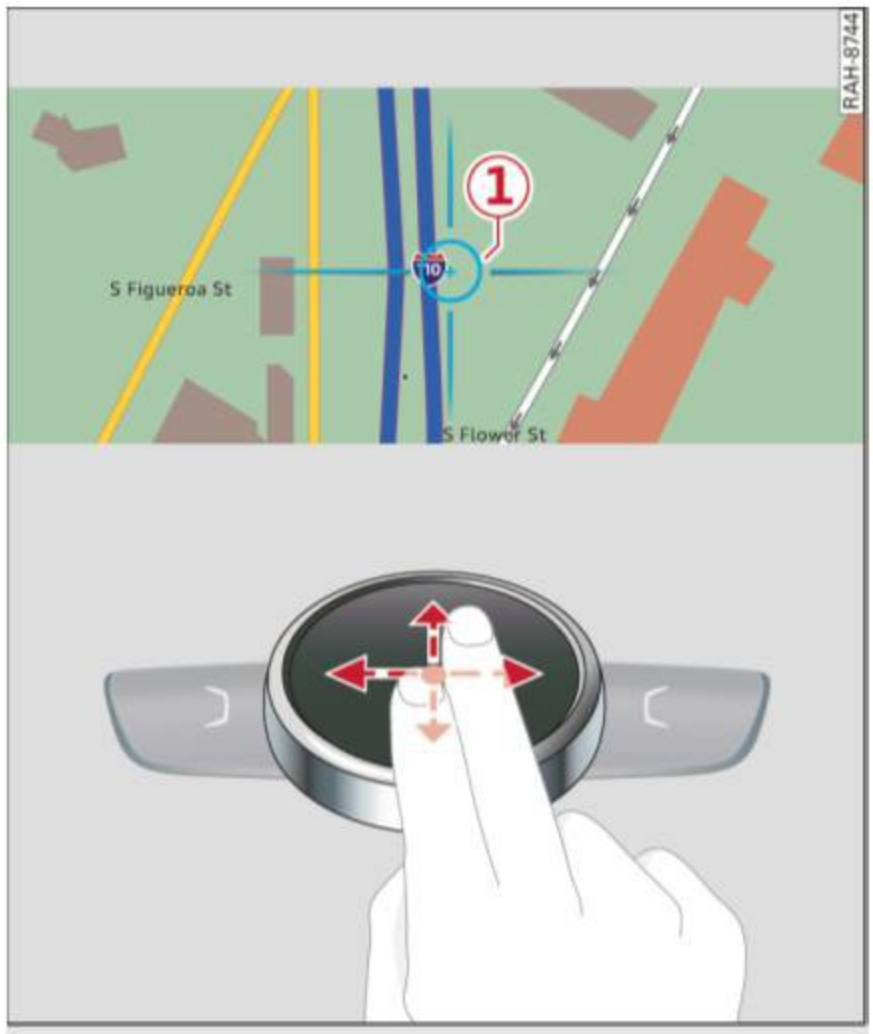


Fig. 101 Moving the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

– **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs ① ⇨ *fig. 101*.
– **Moving the map**: when the crosshairs are visible ① ⇨ *fig. 101* pull two fingers in the desired direction across the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *fig. 101*.
– **Moving the map quickly**: when the crosshairs are visible ① ⇨ *fig. 101*, pull two fingers across the MMI touch control pad quickly in the desired direction ⇨ *fig. 101*. The map will come to a stop after several seconds.

Zooming in/out on the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

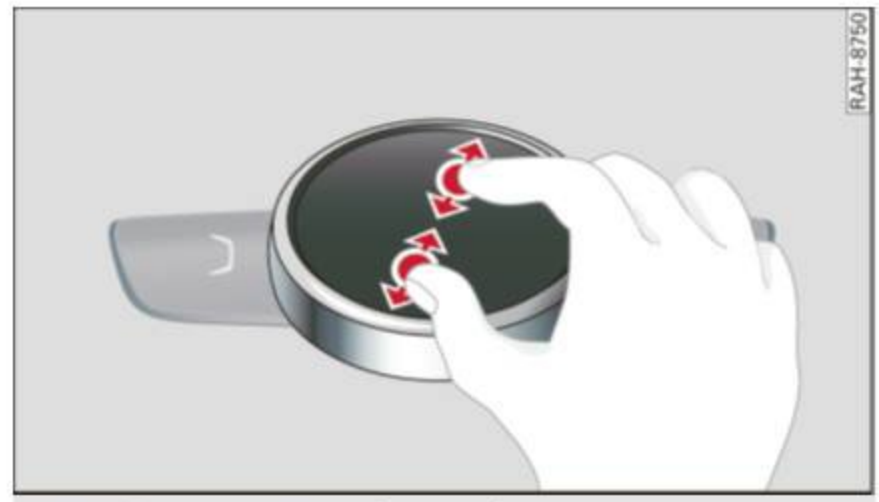


Fig. 102 Zooming in and out on the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

– **Zooming in/out on the map**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. Touch the MMI touch control pad with two fingers and pull your fingers apart or together ⇨ *fig. 102*.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* to hide the crosshairs.

Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Requirement: the **Balance/fader** function must be selected ⇨ *page 178*.

– **Moving the crosshairs for sound focus**: move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad.
– **Storing the crosshairs location**: press the control knob twice. **Or**: press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93*.

Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 163*. The DVD main menu is shown.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move your finger up/down or left/right on the MMI touch control pad.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob. ▶

Tips

The volume of the prompts for the MMI touch* can be adjusted separately ⇨ *page 179*.

Operating

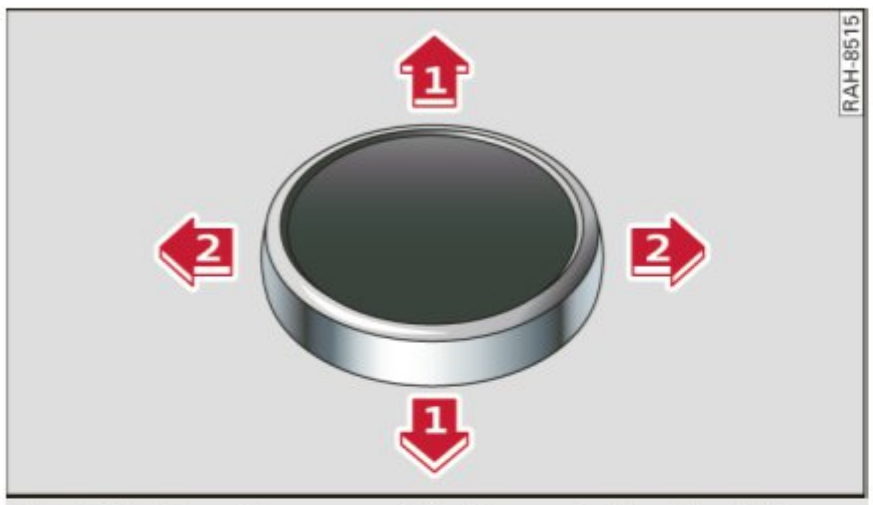


Fig. 103 Operating concept for the control knob with joystick function

You can push the control knob up or down ① ⇨ *fig. 103* or to the right or left ②.

Opening and closing the selection menu

Push the control knob toward the left to open the selection menu ⇨ *page 98*.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* to return to the function one level up. **Or**: push the control knob to the right to close the selection menu.

Opening and closing the options menu

Push the control knob to the right to open the options menu ⇨ *page 98*.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* to return to the function one level up. **Or**: push the control knob to the left to close the options menu.

Displaying the input field*

Push the control knob up to reach the beginning of a list in the central area/input field.

Switching to speller input*

When the input field is already open, switch directly to the speller in the input field by pushing the control knob up again ⇨ *page 102, Letter/number speller*.

On the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

– **Displaying the input field***: push the control knob upward.
– **Displaying route guidance**: when route guidance is active, you can also display the route guidance by pushing the control knob up ⇨ *page 136*.
– **Zooming in/out on the map (zoom)**: turn the control knob to the right/left to zoom in/out on the map.

Adjusting the sound focus*

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 178*. The crosshairs are shown.

– **Moving the sound focus using the crosshairs**: the crosshairs can be moved horizontally. Turn the control knob to the left or right. To move the crosshairs vertically, press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right. To store the setting, press the control knob again.

Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 163*.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move the control knob with joystick function up or down or to the left or right.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

8S0012721BB

Opening the selection/ options menu with the control knob

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function



Fig. 104 Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob

Opening/closing the selection menu: push the control knob to the left ②⇨ *fig. 104* to open the selection menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* to return to the function one level up.

Opening/closing the options menu: push the control knob to the right ②⇨ *fig. 104* to open the options menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 96, fig. 93* to return to the function one level up.

Letter/number speller



Fig. 105 Diagram: letter/number speller

You can enter letters, numbers and symbols in the MMI using the letter/number speller. This option is available when the input field ②⇨ *fig. 105* is active.

– **Opening/closing the letter/number speller**: move the control knob up/down when the input field is active. **Or**: select the right control button > **Open speller/Close speller**. ▶

– **Entering characters**: turn the control knob to the desired character using the character selection (10) ⇨ *fig. 105*. Press the control knob to confirm the character. Your input is displayed in the input field (2). When you have entered all of the characters, select and confirm LIST (1). **Or**: push the control knob down.
– **Entering accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö)***: turn the control knob with the character selection (10) ⇨ *fig. 105* to a character. To open the selected accented characters, press and hold the control knob. Turn the control knob with the character selection (10) ⇨ *fig. 105* to an accented character. Press the control knob to insert the accented character. To close the accented characters without selecting a character, press and hold the control knob again. **Or**: select and confirm äöü (7) ⇨ *fig. 105*. Select and confirm an accented character.
– **Deleting characters**: select and confirm ⌫ (12) ⇨ *fig. 105*. To delete all characters in the input field, press and hold the control knob on ⌫ (12) ⇨ *fig. 105* until all characters in the input field are deleted.
– **Entering special characters**: select and confirm !&? (6) ⇨ *fig. 105* or 123 (8). Select and confirm the desired special character (for example, a hyphen or period) with the number speller.
– **Input assistance**: in some cases such as in navigation*, there is a word suggestion* (11) ⇨ *fig. 105* based on available entries while you are entering data. You can select this suggestion by pushing the control knob upward.
– **Results list**: in some cases, such as in the directory, the system switches automatically to the results list based on available entries (3) ⇨ *fig. 105*. Select and confirm a suggestion from the list.

Requirement: the input field (2) ⇨ *fig. 105* must be active.

– **Switching between speller and MMI touch***: the handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is activated automatically. Simply start writing.

Overview of symbols in the speller

The symbols in the letter/number speller are explained in the following table:

	Symbol/Description	Description
(1)	LIST or ▾	Switches to the results list.
(2)	Input field	The current input is displayed.
(3)	Results list	A list with suggestions based on the letters already entered is displayed.
(4)	⬆	Switches from lower case to upper case letters or from upper case to lower case letters.
(5)	⊂+	Open additional speller options (for example **Close speller**, **Clear input field**)
(6)	!&?	Punctuation marks and special characters (such as hyphens or periods) are shown.
(7)	äöü	Accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö) are shown.
(8)	123/ABC	Switches from letter to number input or from number to letter input.
(9)	⎵	Adds a space in the input field.
(10)	Character selection	Highlights the selected character.

8S0012721BB

	Symbol/Description	Description
⑪	▲	Inserts the input suggestion* when you push the control knob up.
⑫	⌫	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.

Tips

Accented characters are not available for every letter.

Free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field.



Fig. 106 Example: free text search on telephone

Free text search is available in the **Vehicle***, **Radio**, **Media***, **Telephone***, **Navigation*** and **Audi connect*** menus.

Opening free text search

- Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (such as Telephone).
- Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① ⇨ *fig. 106* appears. **Or**: if necessary, push the control knob up to open the input field ① ⇨ *fig. 106*.

The handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is automatically activated. Simply start writing.

Free text search for an entry

- Enter one or more search terms in any order into the input field at the same time. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces when entering.

An input suggestion to complete the entry ③ ⇨ *fig. 106* is shown depending on the input. Additional entries that contain the entered search term are listed In the results list ② ⇨ *fig. 106*.

If the desired term is still not displayed, enter additional letters until it is displayed.

It is often enough just to enter the first letters of the search term in order for it to display in the results list. For example, in the **Telephone*** menu, write the initials of the contact being searched for separated by a space.

Selecting the input suggestion to complete the entry

Requirement: an input suggestion to complete the entry ③ ⇨ *fig. 106* must be displayed.

- **MMI touch input**: press the control knob.
- **Speller input**: push the control knob up.

Selecting an entry from the results list

- **MMI touch input**: turn the control knob to the right. Select and confirm an entry from the list.
- **Speller input**: select and confirm LIST ① ⇨ *page 102, fig. 105*. **Or**: push the control knob down. Select and confirm an entry from the list.

Menus and Symbols

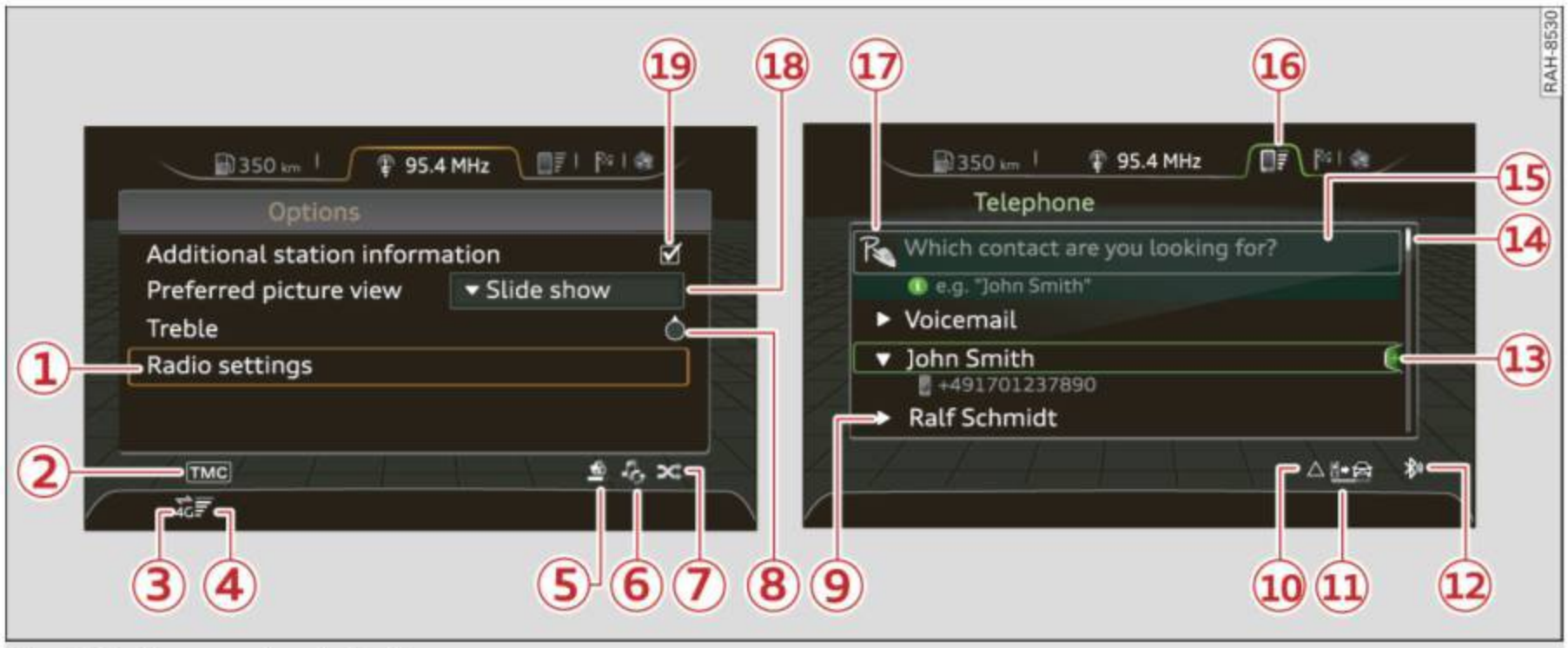


Fig. 107 Menus and symbols diagram

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Selected text	Selected function
②	TMC	TMC/online traffic information reception ⇨ *page 147*
③	2G/3G/LTE*	Network coverage for the active data connection ⇨ *page 131* **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network **LTE***: LTE network When a data connection is established, the symbol for an active data connection appears in the status line on the Infotainment system display ⇨ *page 131*
④	Data connection signal strength bars*	Signal strength for the active data connection, or **PIN**: enter the PIN (SIM) **PUK**: enter the PUK **SIM**: insert the SIM card ⇨ *page 126*
⑤	Jukebox* importing process	Importing audio/video files to the Jukebox* ⇨ *page 157*
⑥	Repeat track	The track currently playing is repeated ⇨ *page 166*
⑦	Shuffle	All files on the playlist are played in random order ⇨ *page 166*, **Shuffle**
⑧	Knob	Setting for the selected function by turning the control knob
⑨	Arrow	Access information by pressing the control knob
⑩	Roaming	Leave the mobile network for the connected cell phone or the inserted mini SIM card
⑪	Importing process	Import/update the contacts in the directory or the call lists
⑫	Bluetooth*	Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 158* or ⇨ *page 114*
⑬	Options menu	Select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
⑭	Scroll bars	Name of a long list Move within lists using the control knob
⑮	Input field	Information that can be changed using the letter/number speller ⇨ *page 102* or the MMI touch* ⇨ *page 99*.
⑯	Cell phone signal strength bars*	Cell phone network signal strength for a connected cell phone ⇨ *page 114*
⑰	MMI touch*	Operation using the MMI touch control pad is possible
⑱	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that are accessed by pressing the control knob
⑲	Check boxes	You can switch certain functions on ☑ or off ☐ by pressing the control knob.

GLOBAL COMMANDS

- Telephone
- Audi connect
- Navigation
- Directory
- Radio
- Media
- Sound
- Help
- Help Speech dialog system
- Help Telephone
- Help Audi connect
- Help Navigation
- Help Map
- Help Radio
- Help Media
- Favorites
- Call (XY)
- Enter number
- Redial
- Read new text message
- Navigate to (XY)
- Enter address/destination
- Online destinations
- Cancel route guidance
- Map
- Line (XY)
- Next page / previous page
- Cancel
- No, I meant (XY)
- Correction

TELEPHONE

- Enter number
  - Delete number / correction
- Directory
- Call (XY)
  - business / private / land line / mobile
- Call list
- Redial
- Call mailbox
- Enter PIN / delete PIN
- Telephone favorites

NAVIGATION

- Navigate to (XY)
  - Business address / Private address
- Start / cancel route guidance
- Directory
- Last destinations
- Navigation favorites
- Drive home
- Enter address
- Enter country / town / street / state
- Exclude route / Exclude route for (XY) km / m
- Exclude next route section / Exclude next street
- Route list
- Calculate alternative routes
- Online destinations
- Special destination

MAP

- Map
- Day map / Night map
- 2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map

AUDI CONNECT

- Audi connect
- Travel information / Parking information
- Fuel prices
- Weather
- Flight information / Train information
- City events
- Online news
- Twitter

RADIO

- Radio presets
- Last stations
- FM
- FM / AM / SIRIUS XM
- Station (XY) / Frequency (XY)
- Traffic announcement on / off

MEDIA

- Jukebox
- CD / DVD
- SD card 1 / SD card 2
- Audi music interface / iPod / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)
- Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos
- Folder up
- Random playback on / off

RAH-8402

Fig. 108 Command overview

Voice recognition system

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many Infotainment functions conveniently by speaking.

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on, there must be no phone call in progress and the parking system must not be active.

- **Switching on**: briefly press the button (2) ⇨ *page 21, fig. 10* on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the **Beep**.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.
- **Pause**: say the command **Pause**. To resume, press the button.
- **Correcting**: press the button one time (5) ⇨ *page 20, fig. 8*. **Or**: say the command **Correction**.

Input assistance

The system guides you through the input with visual and audio feedback.

– **Visual input assistance**: after switching on voice recognition, a display with a selection of possible commands appears. The command display can be switched on/off under MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialog system**.
– **Audio input assistance**: to have the possible commands read, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel briefly and say **Help**.

For the system to understand you:

Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.

Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.

Do not speak a command when the voice recognition system is making an announcement.

Close the doors, the windows and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.

Only use the system from the driver's seat because the hands free microphone is directed toward that seat.

Additional settings

See ⇨ *page 179, Voice recognition system*.

WARNING

– Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

– The dialog pauses when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog ends if you answer the call.
– There are no navigation prompts* when a dialog is active.
– You can select an item in the list using either the voice recognition system or the control knob.

Command overview information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

The following overviews describe the commands that can be used to operate the MMI using the voice recognition system.

Alternative commands are separated using a "**/**", for example say: **Telephone** / (or) **Navigation** / (or) **Radio**.

Sequences of commands used to perform an action are identified with a "**>**", for example say: **Enter address** > (then) **Enter country/state**. ▶

The majority shown are main commands. This system also recognizes synonyms in certain cases. For a **business address**, you can also say **business**, **work**, **office** or **at the office**.

Commands

Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can always use the global commands, regardless of the menu selected.

Function	Say:
Opening a menu	**Telephone** / **Directory** / **Navigation** / **Radio** / **Media** / **Audi connect*** / **Car** / **Tone**
Having the possible commands read aloud	**Help** / **Help Speech dialog system** / **Help Telephone** / **Help Navigation** / **Help Map** / **Help Radio** / **Help Media** / **Help Audi connect***
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory** / **Read out text message**
Navigation functions	**Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to "John Smith"** / **Enter address** / **Cancel route guidance** / **Map** / **Online destinations*** / **Online destination (XY)***
Accessing favorites	**Favorites** > *follow the system prompts*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page** / **Previous page**
Correct the command given	**Correction**
Switching the voice recognition system off	**Cancel**

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 114* and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 109*.

You can say the following commands depending on the selected menu item:

Function	Say:
Call a contact from the directory	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"**
Selecting a specific contact number	**Call (XY) at work** / **Private** / **Landline** / **Cell phone**, for example, **Call "John Smith" private**
Selecting a phone number with an address card open	**Call** / **Call work** / **Call private** / **Call landline** / **Call cell phone work**
Calling a contact from your favorites list	**Telephone favorites** > *After being prompted, say the desired contact* > **Dial**
Displaying recent calls	**Recent calls**
Calling the last number dialed	**Redial**

Function	Say:
Dialing a phone number	**Enter number** > *After being prompted, say the telephone number in groups of individual numbers*, for example. **888 555 1212** > **Dial**
Correcting the phone number that was entered	**Correction** / **Delete number**
Showing contact information	**Directory** > *After being prompted, say the desired contact*, such as **John Smith**
Listening to messages	**Call voicemail**
Entering the PIN (SIM)	**Enter PIN** > *when prompted, say the PIN in individual numbers* > **Save**
Correcting the PIN entry	**Correction** / **Delete PIN**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Tips

– Contacts in the directory can selected using the full name (“first name last name” and “last name, first name”) as well as with only the first or last name. This applies to cell phones that transmit names separated into first and last names.
– For more information on the supported cell phones, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and Audi connect

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 126*.

Function	Say:
Accessing Audi connect services	**Audi connect** > *follow the system prompts.*

Tips

Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132, About Audi connect*.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and navigation system

Requirement: the **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 109*.

You can say the following commands for entering a destination depending on the selected menu item:

Function	Say:
Opening the list of previous navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Accessing favorites	**Navigation favorites**

Function	Say:
Selecting the home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with guidance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the system prompts*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country** / **Enter state** / **Enter city** / **Enter ZIP code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making a correction while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Drive me to "John Smith"**
Navigating to a specific address for a contact	**Navigate to (XY) business** / **private**, for example, “Navigate to John Smith”
Navigating to favorites	**Navigation favorites** > **Line (XY)** / *Line contents* > *Start route guidance when prompted*
Starting route guidance with an address card open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**
Entering a new destination/stopover when route guidance is active	**Enter destination** > *enter the desired address when prompted* > *confirm the new destination/stopover if prompted*
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Canceling current route guidance	**Cancel route guidance**
Calculating alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a point of interest by selecting a search area with guidance from the system	**Point of interest** > **Change search area** > *category or subcategory when prompted*, for example “restaurant”
Destination input categories	**Audi Service** / **Train station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking facility** / **Rest area** / **Restaurant** / **Gas station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering points of interest	**Nearby** / **Along the route** / **Near destination** / **Near stopover** / **In new city** / **In new state or country**
Entering an online destination*	**Online destination (XY)**, for example “**Online destination "Lakeview Hotel"**”
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Requirement: you must be in the **Navigation** or **Map** menu. You can say the following commands for more settings in Navigation:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map** / **Day map** / **Night map** / **Automatically change map color**
Map type	**2D heading up map** / **2D north up map** / **3D map** / **Destination map** / **Overview map** / **Standard map** / **Traffic map** / **Google Earth map***
Showing the route list	**Route list**

8S0012721BB

Function	Say:
Showing the remaining distance/ time when route guidance is active	**Destination information**
Speed limit prompt	**How fast can I drive here**
Setting voice guidance for active route guidance	**Voice guidance on** | **Voice guidance off** | **Voice guidance shortened** | **Voice guidance complete** | **Voice guidance traffic**
Blocking a certain section on the route	**Block route (XY) meters/kilometers/yards/miles** / **Block next route** / **Avoid next section of route**

Tips

– Destinations may have to be spelled when entered, depending on the country where you are located and which menu language you have selected.

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132, About Audi connect*.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Radio** must already be open.

You can say the following commands depending on the selected frequency band:

Function	Say:
Selecting the frequency band	**FM** / **SiriusXM*** / **AM**
Selecting a station from the station list	**Channel (XY)** / **Frequency (XY)** / **Last stations**
Selecting a station from favorites/ presets	**Radio presets** > **Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)** / **Frequency (XY) HD 1**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Media

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: you must be in the **Media** menu.

You can say the following commands depending on the active media:

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox*** / **CD** / **DVD** / **SD card 1** / **SD card 2** / **Audi music interface*** / **iPhone*** / **USB*** / **Bluetooth*** / **Wi-Fi*** / **Medium (XY)**, for example “John's player”
Selecting audio /video files* from the Jukebox*	**Media favorites** / **Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Videos**
Selecting audio files on an iPod (source: Audi music interface*)	**Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Composers** / **Podcasts** / **Audio books**

Function	Say:
Navigating within a folder structure/list	**Folder up** / **Line (XY)**
Selecting shuffle	**Shuffle on** / **Shuffle off**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Close the entire command list	**Close**

External voice operation

Applies to: vehicles with external speech dialog system

Requirement:

The ignition and the MMI must be switched on.

There must not be a phone call in progress.

The parking aid as well as the Audi voice recognition system must not be active.

A cell phone must be connected to the MMI through the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 114*.

The cell phone being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally.

- **Switching on**: press and *hold* the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the external speech dialog begins.
- **Resuming dialog**: if necessary, press the button and say a new command. **Or**: select and confirm **Resume** on the MMI control panel.
- **Restarting dialog**: the system remains ready to use for a short time after ending the dialog. You can start a new dialog during this time. Briefly press the button. **Or**: select and confirm **Start speech dialog system** on the MMI control panel.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control panel.

Tips

– Voice guidance* and traffic announcements* are not given during a dialog.
– This function depends on the cell phone used. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.

– AUDI AG simply provides access to control your cell phone with voice operation and does not take any responsibility for the contents and commands within the external voice control.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

To make phone calls in your vehicle using the MMI, connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth.

Handsfree

After you have connected your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth, you can use the handsfree system and operate telephone functions through your MMI. You can make calls using the antenna on your cell phone.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that cell phones can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimeters between the cell phone antenna and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the cell phone in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the cell phone off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 108* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 96, Traffic safety information*.

Tips

- To learn which Bluetooth connections and which of the functions in your cell phone are supported, check with your cell phone service provider or the database for mobile devices at **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth**.
- The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It can also be affected by local conditions and interference with other devices.

Setup

Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

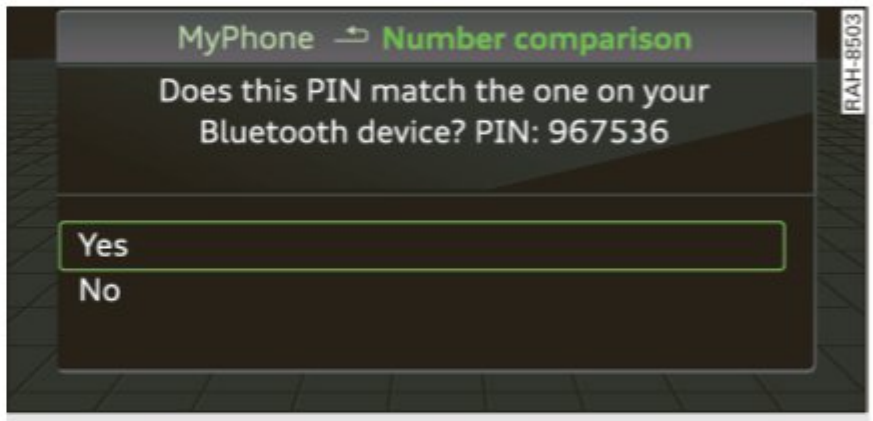


Fig. 109 Displaying the PIN for entering in the cell phone

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 176* and cell phone must be switched on.

The cell phone to be connected must not be actively connected to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must not be connected to a cell phone.

Connecting a cell phone

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile device** > **Next**. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the Infotainment system display. **Or**: search for the MMI in your cell phone through the Bluetooth device search.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired cell phone from the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- ▸ The MMI generates a PIN for the connection setup ⇨ *fig. 109*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.

- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. **Or**: when the PIN is displayed on your cell phone, confirm the PIN on your cell phone and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may have to confirm downloading the directory separately.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, a short message with information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change profiles later. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 176*.

In addition, the cell phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI directory. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

Tips

- – Making phone calls through the MMI is only possible using the **Handsfree** Bluetooth profile.
- – You can apply additional settings to connected cell phones using the connection manager ⇨ *page 175*.
- – You can also search for the MMI in your cell phone using the Bluetooth device search.
- – You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, they are within range and the ignition is switched on. The last connected cell phone is given first priority.
- – Authorizing the MMI connection in your cell phone will make automatic connection possible.
- – Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may also need to download the directory and confirm access to your text messages separately.
- – When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the cell phone will automatically disconnect. Depending on your cell phone, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your cell phone and you can continue the call on your phone.
- – You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide. For information on using the telephone, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Operating two telephones through the MMI

You can connect two cell phones to the MMI, for example your business cell phone as the main phone and your private cell phone as the additional phone. You can be reached in your vehicle through both cell phones.

The first connected cell phone is displayed as the main phone in the MMI. The second cell phone is connected as the additional phone.

The directory from the connected main phone will always be displayed. If you would like to use the directory from the additional phone, you must switch the main and additional phone ⇨ *page 116*.

Connecting a cell phone as the main phone

Connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth. The first connected cell phone is displayed as the **Main phone** in the MMI.

See ⇨ *page 114, Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth*.

Connecting a cell phone as the additional phone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI as the main phone.

Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect additional telephone**. ▸

8S0012721BB

See ⇨ *page 114, Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth*.

Example: you have connected your business cell phone to the MMI as the main phone and your private cell phone as the additional phone. To be able to call contacts from your private cell phone directory, you must switch the main and additional phone, since the directory from the main phone is always displayed.

Switching the main and additional phone

Requirement: a main phone and an additional phone must be connected.

Switch main and additional phone: select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Switch main and additional phone**.

Tips

- Please note that the directory from the main phone is always displayed.
- You can see if a cell phone is connected as the main or additional phone in the connection manager ⇨ *page 175*. **Or**: the device name of the connected main phone is shown in the **Telephone** menu (such as MyPhone).
- If the main phone does not connect automatically to the MMI when the ignition is switched on, for example because it is out of the vehicle range or the Bluetooth function is switched off, then a previously paired additional phone is automatically connected as the main phone.
- You can send and receive messages on your main phone as well as on your additional phone ⇨ *page 116, fig. 110*. You do not need to switch your main phone and additional phone for this.
- You can also make your connected cell phone the default phone by selecting **Set as default telephone** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 176*.

Using the telephone

Opening the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 110 Telephone functions in selection menu



Fig. 111 Advanced selection menu in the telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 114*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following telephone functions are available ⇨ *fig. 110*:

① Recent calls 117
② Favorites 119
③ Directory 122
④ Enter number 117
⑤ Text message (myPhone)* /E-mail (myPhone)* 119, 120

The device name for your cell phone is displayed in the **Telephone** menu, for example text message (myPhone) ⇨ *fig. 110*.

Dialing a phone number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

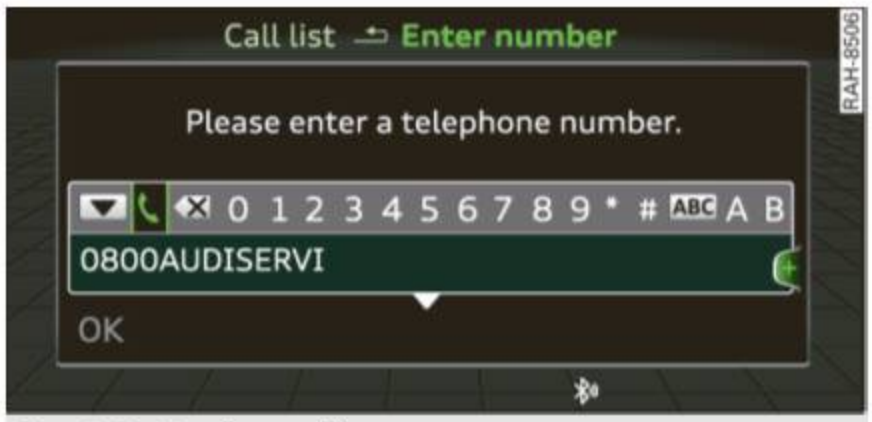


Fig. 112 Number speller



Fig. 113 Dialing a phone number from the recent calls list

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Recent calls

Requirement: the call list must contain a phone number.

Turn the control knob to display the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number from the recent calls list.

Call list symbols ⇨ *fig. 113*:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Received calls

Select: *a contact from the list* > right control button.

– **Call**: call the selected contact.
– **Connect additional telephone*/Switch main and additional phone***: see ⇨ *page 115*.
– **Edit phone number before calling**: edit a phone number before dialing it. Select and confirm **OK** to edit. **Or**: press the left control button to return without editing.
– **Send text message**: write a text message to the selected contact.
– **Delete recent calls**: select and confirm if you would like to **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.
– **Store as favorite**: store the selected contact as a favorite.

Favorites

Requirement: a phone number or contact must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 119*.

Select and confirm a favorite in the favorites list.

Directory

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

Select and confirm a phone number from the directory ⇨ *page 122*.

Enter number

– **Entering a phone number as a sequence of numbers**: enter the number using the number speller ⇨ *fig. 112*.
– **Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters**: select and confirm ABC above the number speller. Enter a sequence of letters using the letter speller, for example *AUDISERVICE*.
– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm ✆. **Or**: push the control knob down. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Deleting individual characters**: select and confirm ⌫.
– **Deleting all characters entered at once**: turn the control knob with the character selection to ⌫ and press and hold the control knob. **Or**: select the right control button > **Clear input field**.

Tone sequences (**DTMF**) can be entered directly into the speller during a phone call.

Accepting/ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

– **Accepting a call**: select and confirm **Accept call**.
– **Declining a call**: select and confirm **Decline**.
– **Muting the active call**: select and confirm **Mute**. ▸

– **Ending a phone call/cancel dialing**: select and confirm **End call**. **Or**: press the control knob.

Accepting another call: see ⇨ *page 118, During a phone call*.

Caller information: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the Infotainment system display depending on if the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted. A picture may also be displayed, depending on whether you have assigned a picture to a contact in your directory and if it was transferred to your MMI. You can find out if your cell phone supports this function from your cell phone network provider, your cell phone owner's manual or at **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth**.

Tips

The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

▸ Press the right control button.

The following options are possible during a call depending on the cell phone being used and the type of connection:

– **Making an additional call**: select: **Find contact** > **Recent calls/Directory/Favorites** > *an entry from the list*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.
– **Answering an additional call**: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Accept call** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call. If you select **Decline**, the incoming call will be declined.

Additional functions include:

Mute: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You can hear the other person.

Hold call/Resume: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again. To resume the call, select and confirm the call you would like to resume.

Transfer call to mobile device*: select and confirm **Transfer call to mobile device** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your cell phone.

Switch to hands-free mode*: Requirement: you must have a phone call in progress on your cell phone. Select and confirm **Switch to hands-free mode** to transfer the call from your cell phone to the MMI.

Swap call: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A phone call on hold can be resumed through the right control button > **Resume**.

Add to conference: a party on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the network) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using the right control button > **Hold conference**. Press the left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *an entry from the list*. You can add called contacts to the conference using the right control button > **Add to conference**. **Resume** takes all parties off hold.

Multi-party calling: select the right control button > **Telephone settings** > **Call options**. When the function is switched on ☑ you can accept an additional call using **Accept call** or decline a call using **Decline**. When the function is switched off, you can **Replace** the call or **Decline**.

Connection manager: see ⇨ *page 175*.

Telephone settings: see ⇨ *page 124*.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the call waiting function in your cell phone must be switched on when using the hands-free profile (**Handsfree**).
– You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide. ▶

– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the cell phone will automatically disconnect. Depending on your cell phone, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your cell phone and you can continue the call on your phone.
– The display of an incoming phone call in the Infotainment system display may still be visible for a few seconds depending on the cell phone in use. Using the **Replace** or **Decline** functions may then end the active phone call.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Up to 50 contacts, in addition to the voicemail number, can be stored in any order in the favorites list.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

– **Storing an existing phone number as a favorite**: select and confirm **Recent calls/Directory**. Select and confirm a contact or phone number from the list. Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**. Enter a name for the favorite or select a suggestion. Select and confirm with **Store**.
– **Renaming a stored favorite**: select and confirm **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*. Select the right control button > **Rename favorite**.
– **Moving a stored favorite**: select and confirm **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*. Select the right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting a stored favorite**: select and confirm **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*. Select the right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the cell phone being used and the cell phone network contract, you can receive and send text messages using the MMI.

Requirement

A cell phone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth MAP (Message Access Profile) ⇨ *page 114*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (MyPhone)/Text message (additional phone)***.

Inbox

All received text messages are displayed.

Sent text messages

All sent text messages are displayed.

Outbox

All text messages to be sent are displayed.

Tips

– Please note that you may have to activate the receiving and sending of text messages in your cell phone depending on the SIM card being used (for example, when using a Multi-SIM). You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.
– For more information on the supported cell phones, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– You need a cell phone with Message Access Profile that also supports the sending function to be able to send text messages through the MMI.

Writing a text message

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (MyPhone)/Text message (additional phone)*** > **Inbox** > right control button.

Write text message

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Enter a recipient. Select and confirm **Send**.

Reply*

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Select and confirm **Send**.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Text message (MyPhone)/Text message (additional phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected message in the **Inbox**.

Forward

The selected text message can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Send again*

The selected text message can be resent.

Delete this text message*

The selected text message can be deleted.

Read aloud[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open text message.

Text messaging settings*

To display when a new text message is received, activate the **Text message notifications**. New text messages are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 175*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 124*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the cell phone automatically.

E-mail*

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the type of cell phone used, you can receive and send e-mails through the MMI.

Requirement: the Message Access Profile (MAP) must be activated in the Bluetooth settings on your cell phone and your cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 114*. You can find out in your cell phone owner's manual if your cell phone supports this function.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (MyPhone)/E-mail (additional phone)***.

Write new e-mail

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the desired template from the list.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Inbox

All received e-mails are displayed.

Sent

All sent e-mails are displayed. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

Outbox

All e-mails that will be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All saved e-mails that have not been sent yet are displayed.

Tips

- For more information on the supported cell phones, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- To ensure that your sent e-mails are received, connect your cell phone to the Wi-Fi hotspot* in the vehicle so that the applicable e-mail app on your cell phone continues to have Internet access. If you are still not receiving e-mails even though you have a successful connection, then contact your e-mail service provider or your cell phone service provider.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **E-mail (MyPhone)/E-mail (additional phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Store as template

Ten e-mail templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to ten additional templates.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Resume last edited e-mail

The last e-mail in progress can be resumed.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.

Reply to all*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox** and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients.

Forward

The selected e-mail can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Delete this message*

The selected e-mail can be deleted.

Read aloud[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open e-mail.

E-mail settings*

To display when a new e-mail is received, activate the **E-mail notifications**. New e-mails are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 175*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 124*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also automatically deleted in the connected cell phone.

Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Recent calls/Directory/Favorites** > **Voicemail**.

– **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Dialing the voicemail number**: select and confirm **Voicemail**. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

Tips

– This service must be set up and activated in advance by the cell phone service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– The voicemail number depends on the cell phone service provider.

Emergency call functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Enter number** > *Enter emergency call number (for example, 911)* > **OK**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Directory

Opening the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

After connecting the cell phone, the contacts in it are automatically imported into the MMI.

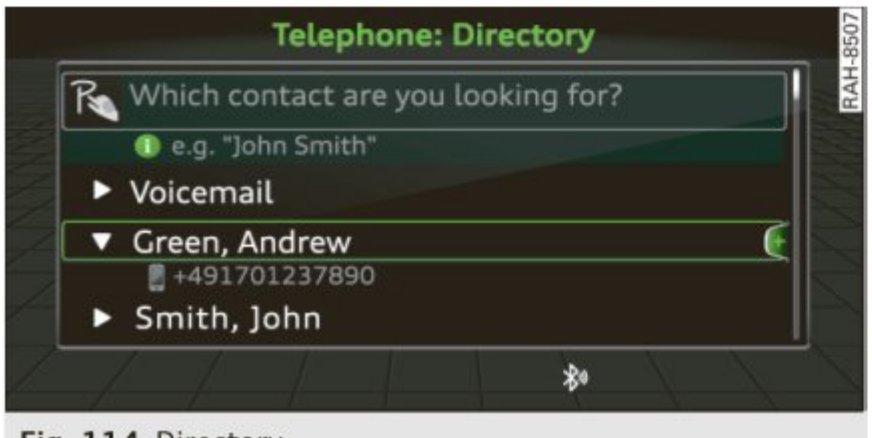


Fig. 114 Directory

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.

– **Selecting a contact**: select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for your selected contact are displayed. Select and confirm a phone number to start a call.
– **Free text search for a contact**: see ⇨ *page 104*.

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted by first or last name ⇨ *page 124*.

The directory can be opened through the **Telephone*** menu as well as through the **Navigation*** menu.

Tips

– Check for a possible request to synchronize on your cell phone. Requests to synchronize the directory must be confirmed so that your cell phone contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
– The contact display in the MMI depends on the cell phone used. For more information on the supported cell phones, visit **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The directory from the cell phone with the active connection will always be displayed.
– The contacts from the cell phone may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.

Free text search for contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact being searched with each initial separated by a space. Enter additional letters if necessary. ▶

▸ Select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for the selected contact are displayed.
▸ To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 104*.

Showing contact details*

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

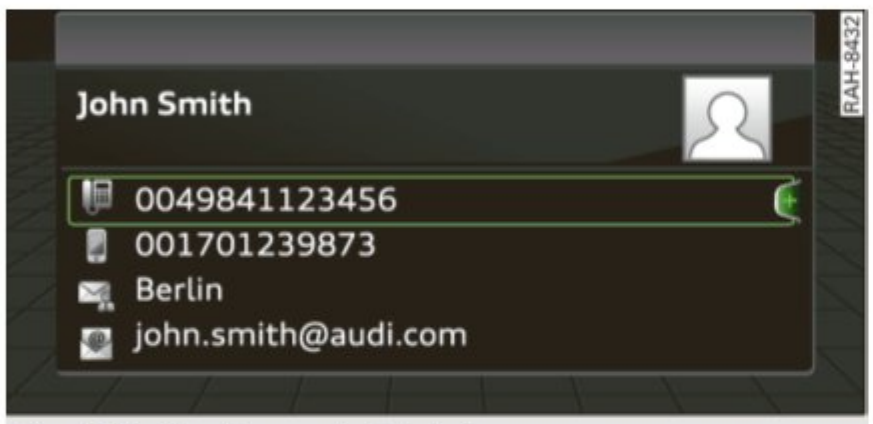


Fig. 115 Showing contact details

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

– **Calling**: select and confirm the desired telephone number.
– **Adding a navigation destination**: to start navigation*, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to open additional options for the contact details.

– **Read out contact**: the MMI automatically creates a name tag that can be read aloud for each entry in the directory.
– **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 119, Favorites*.

– **Send text message***: you can send a text message to the selected contact ⇨ *page 120*
– **Delete contact**: the selected contact can be deleted.

Tips

– Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.
– Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be edited or deleted.

Importing and exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory or exported.

Requirement: an SD card must be in the SD card reader ⇨ *page 156* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 161*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.

– **Importing contacts from a storage device**: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
– **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
– **Selecting all contacts at once to import/export**: select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**.
– **Importing contacts from your myAudi account**[1)]: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **myAudi account** Enter your myAudi user data. ▶

1) The requirements for using Audi connect services* must be met and you must have a myAudi account set up at http://my.audiusa.com. You must have a vehicle stored in your myAudi account and you must have contacts stored.

You must have a **myAudi account** in order to import contacts from the account. Entering your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN is only required one time. You will receive the myAudi PIN in your myAudi account once you have registered a vehicle in the account.

Tips

- Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132, About Audi connect*.
- For additional information on the myAudi account, visit **www.audi.com/myaudi**.
- The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory.
- A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be imported. You can check the memory capacity for the directory at any time ⇨ *page 124*.
- Never save important data on memory cards or USB storage devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.
- Contacts that were downloaded from a cell phone cannot be exported.
- There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.

Settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

Multi-party calling: can be switched **on**/**off**.

Ringtone and volume settings[1)]

Using the **Mute telephone** function, you can switch the ringtone on your MMI on or off. The ringtones are played using the **Ringtone** function. Select and confirm an entry from the list. For the **Ringtone volume**/**Message volume** settings, see ⇨ *page 178*. The **Microphone input level** can be adjusted during a phone call using the control knob.

Tips

- Several cell phones can be paired to the MMI, but only two* cell phones can be actively connected.
- To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 175*.

Additional options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 175*.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 176*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 177*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 130, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory** > right control button > **Directory settings**.

Memory capacity

Shows the **Memory capacity** for the directory.

You can manage up to 17,000 contacts with the MMI directory. You can load up to 4,000 contacts from your cell phone into each directory. You can also import up to 1,000 contacts from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to **Last name** or **First name**. ▸

1) Depends on the connected cell phone.

Import contacts

See ⇨ *page 123, Importing and exporting contacts*.

Export contacts

See ⇨ *page 123, Importing and exporting contacts*.

Download directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your cell phone contacts. Depending on the cell phone, the Bluetooth connection may need to be disconnected and reconnected to update the contacts.

Hide contacts without phone number

When this function is switched on ☑, contacts that do not have any numbers assigned to them will be grayed out in the directory.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Problem	Solution
Connecting the cell phone to the MMI failed.	Check if the requirements for connecting a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 114*. **Or:** check if you accidentally declined the connection setup PIN on your cell phone. If necessary, repeat the connection setup process ⇨ *page 114*.
After pairing, **not all contacts/no contacts** are loaded in the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your cell phone.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider, in your cell phone user guide or in the database for mobile devices at **www.audi.com/bluetooth**.
Some **telephone functions** are switched off or not available, even though the cell phone is supported.	On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible or the cell phone Bluetooth function may be deactivated. You can obtain more information from your system administrator.

Audi connect

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

With Audi connect services, online information is transmitted and integrated directly in the vehicle.

A mobile end device can be used to access the Internet through a Wi-Fi hotspot, either when the vehicle is stationary or from the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services when road and traffic conditions permit. Always read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 96, Traffic safety information*.
- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, use the Audi connect services with a Wi-Fi hotspot only in the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion or only when the vehicle is stationary.

Note

Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided SIM card. Audi AG is not liable for the consequences of using other SIM cards.

Tips

Read this chapter also before operating ⇨ *page 132, About Audi connect*.

Setup

Audi connect requirements

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect. The following requirements must be met to establish a connection:

- The Audi connect SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card reader for the MMI.
- A data connection must be configured for Audi connect services.

Tips

The data connection for Audi connect services is preconfigured at the factory. You can change the data connection at any time if you need to adjust the configuration ⇨ *page 131*.

Using the SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with SIM card reader and Audi connect



Fig. 116 Mini SIM card is pictured in actual size

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary.

The ignition must be switched on. ▶

Inserting the Audi SIM card

- ▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect**.
- ▸ To establish an Internet connection for Audi connect services, confirm the message that appears with **Accept**.
- ▸ The angled corner of the Audi connect SIM card must be at the left front corner. Slide the Audi connect SIM card into the slot on the SIM card reader until the card clicks into place ⇨ *fig. 116*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Enter PIN**.
- ▸ Enter the PIN for your SIM card.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To connect to the Internet automatically in the future, select and then confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Confirm the system prompt asking to connect to the Internet with either **Yes, connect once** or **Yes, always if required**.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, the signal strength and connection type are displayed in the Infotainment system status line ③/④ ⇨ *page 105, fig. 107*.

You can now use Audi connect.

The list of available Audi connect services is displayed in the Infotainment system display.

Removing the Audi connect SIM card

- ▸ Press on the Audi connect SIM card briefly. The card is released from the slot. Remove the Audi connect SIM card.

Note

– Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided Audi connect SIM card. Audi AG is not liable for the consequences of using other SIM cards.

– If a SIM card of a different size is inserted in the SIM card reader instead of an Audi connect mini SIM card, do not under any circumstances remove this card yourself due to the risk of damaging the SIM card reader. Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– You can connect a cell phone with Bluetooth (handsfree) to make phone calls ⇨ *page 114*.

– Audi does not provide support for other SIM cards. Audi recommends using only the provided SIM card.

– You can specify when the MMI connects to the Internet ⇨ *page 131*. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect service no longer requires any data packets.

Configuration through myAudi

Activating/configuring specific Audi connect services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Some Audi connect services must be activated/configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time.

– If you do not have a personal myAudi account yet, you can register online at **my.audiusa.com**.

– Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.

– Activate/configure the Audi connect services you would like for your vehicle in your myAudi account.

– For some Audi connect services, you may also have to enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN when accessing services in the MMI to connect your vehicle to myAudi.

For detailed information on configuration, visit **my.audiusa.com**.

Logging into myAudi in the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

To use some Audi connect services (such as Twitter), you must first connect your vehicle with myAudi to transfer your personal settings from your myAudi account.*

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Log in**.
- ▸ Enter your myAudi user data. **Or**: enter your eight-digit myAudi PIN. ▶

8S0012721BB

▸ Confirm your entry with **OK**.

Then you can open your personal settings from your myAudi account in your vehicle.

Tips

You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account. For additional information, see **my.audiusa.com**.

Audi connect services

Basic functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect



Fig. 117 Example: Audi connect home page with preview

If available, service-specific functions are in the selection menu of that particular Audi connect service ⇨ *page 21*. The basic functions are in the corresponding options menu:

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect** > *the desired Audi connect service* > right control button.

Depending on the Audi connect service selected, the following basic functions are available:

Save as preview

You can display the preview in the overview of the selected Audi connect services ① ⇨ *fig. 117*.

Show on map

You can show selected contents on the map and use them for route guidance.

Read aloud

You can allow the MMI to read out the selected contents.

Start route guidance

If a city was added to an entry (such as **City events**), you can use it as a navigation destination in the MMI.

Refresh

The contents for the selected Audi connect service are refreshed.

Change search area

The set search area can be changed at any time. Additional information on search areas can be found under ⇨ *page 138, Entering a point of interest*.

Close Audi connect service

Regardless of which function is selected, you can close an Audi connect service at any time and return to the Audi connect overview ⇨ *fig. 117*

Parking information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on parking locations and fees in the selected search area (for example **Nearby**).

▸ Select and confirm **Parking information**.

You can use the right control button to sort the parking locations **By distance** or **By availability**.

Travel information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on attractions in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm an attraction to display the details.

Fuel prices

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on gas stations with the lowest fuel prices for your vehicle in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Fuel prices**.

You can use the right control button to sort the fuel prices **By price** or **By distance**.

Weather

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on current weather conditions as well as weather forecasts for the selected search area (for example, **Nearby**).

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

Flight information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on flights and current arrival/departure times in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Flight information**.

You can select the desired information using the right control button.

City events

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Information on events in various categories in the desired search area.

▸ Select and confirm **City events** > left control button > *category*.

Online news

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can check the current headlines of your favorite publications in the MMI.

Requirement: your myAudi account must be subscribed to newsfeeds and your vehicle must be connected to myAudi ⇨ *page 127*.

▸ Select: **Online news** > *desired newsfeed* > *a headline*.

Tips

If you have not subscribed to any personal newsfeeds in your myAudi account, pre-configured newsfeeds will be displayed.

Twitter

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can access the most important functions in your Twitter account through your MMI.

Requirement:

You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter. Additional information on this can be found in the **Audi connect (myAudi)** operating manual under **my.audiusa.com**.

You must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 127*.

▸ Select **Twitter** > left control button > *desired function* (for example, **Trends**).

The following categories can be selected in the **Twitter** menu:

– **My tweets**: News Feed and the Tweets you have posted are listed.
– **Home**: the Tweets for everyone you follow are displayed.
– **Trends**: topics on Twitter that are currently popular within a country.

Different functions are available depending on the Twitter category you have selected:

– **New tweet**: you can post a new tweet using pre-made templates or using customized templates in your myAudi account.
– **Refresh**: the selected Twitter function is refreshed.
– **Favorite**: set a Tweet as favorite to show you liked it.
– **Retweet**: you can quote a Tweet to share it with others.

Tips

– You can find additional information on connecting your myAudi account with Twitter in the **Audi connect (myAudi)** operating manual at **my.audiusa.com**.
– Other settings such as account, language, Tweet security and location settings *cannot* be changed in the MMI. These changes must be made on the Twitter website. ▶

– You can only connect *one* Twitter account with your myAudi account.
– Audi connect makes it possible to access Twitter. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on Twitter.

Audi connect services in navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

– Navigation with **online map view** and **Street View** ⇨ *page 146*.
– **Point of Interest (POI) online search with voice recognition** (such as restaurants): plan route guidance using the MMI control panel and the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 108*.
– Set up destinations in your MMI using your **myAudi account** or **online map view** ⇨ *page 146*.
– **Online traffic information**: receive up-to-the-minute traffic information about accidents, road construction and other incidents ⇨ *page 147*.
– **Map updates***: import navigation map updates in your MMI using an SD card.

Tips

– For the **Map update** Audi connect service using an SD card, check the current software version in your vehicle and compare it with **my.audiusa.com** to see if a new version is available. You can also have the new navigation data installed by an Audi dealer, which can be done for an additional charge.
– More information on **map updates** can be found in the **Audi connect** Operating Manual under **my.audiusa.com**.

Audi connect services on the phone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

Storing contacts on your computer using your **myAudi Account** and loading the contacts into the MMI directory ⇨ *page 123*.

Audi connect services in the Media menu

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player and Audi connect

– **Wi-Fi audio player**: you can access the media center through Wi-Fi connected media players (such as smartphones) ⇨ *page 159*.
– **Online media**: offers access to different online media services and operation through the MMI using the **Audi MMI connect** app.

Tips

For more information on the Wi-Fi audio player and supported devices, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Additional options

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

The following options are available in the Audi connect services overview:

– **Log in**: see ⇨ *page 127, Logging into myAudi in the vehicle*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 175*.

Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can use the MMI as a Wi-Fi hotspot to connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices to the Internet. While driving, restricted use of unsecured, light, small wireless devices is only possible from the rear of the vehicle.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

The following settings can be modified:

Wi-Fi

The MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated at the factory. Switch the Wi-Fi hotspot to **On** before establishing an Internet connection between your vehicle and your Wi-Fi device. ▶

– **On**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is active and visible to other devices. You can connect your Wi-Fi device with the MMI.
– **Off**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated. An Internet connection for Wi-Fi devices is not possible.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 197*.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

– A separate, paid mobile subscription may be needed to use the Wi-Fi hotspot. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– In vehicles without Audi connect*, the use of the Wi-Fi hotspot is only possible for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.
– Additional information can be found under **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.

Configuring the data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

To use Audi connect services, a data connection must be configured.

▸ Select: MENU button > right control button > **Connection manager**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when an Internet connection should be made. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect service no longer requires any data packets.

The following options can be selected:

Connection setup

– **With request**: a data connection is only established when confirmed.
– **No request**: a data connection is automatically established to use Audi connect services.
– **Never**: a data connection is not established. Audi connect services cannot be accessed.

If a data connection is established, the type of connection and the signal strength is displayed in the status line of the Infotainment system display ③ / ④ ⇨ *page 105, fig. 107*.

An active data connection can be ended manually by setting the **Connection setup** to **Never**.

Data roaming

Data roaming is switched off at the factory. To use a data connection outside of the country, **Data roaming** must be switched on (☑). The setting is stored for the current SIM card or the cell phone that is currently connected.

Audi connect (MMI)

With this function, you can **Allow** or **Deny** the use of Audi connect services if the connection is set to **No request** or **With request**.

Connection settings

The connection is configured automatically based on the SIM card being used. These values can be ▶

changed. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

– **APN**: the access point depends on the cell phone service provider and is assigned automatically.
– **User name**: your cell phone service provider assigns the user name for your online profile.
– **Password**: your cell phone service provider assigns the password for your online profile.

Storing changed Connection settings: press the BACK button.

Reset configuration

An online profile is saved and configured automatically. The **Connection settings** that you changed manually are reset to the default settings.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 197*.
– Do not use any Wi-Fi devices within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 197*.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

– For more information on roaming fees, contact Audi connect customer service at 1 (877) 505-AUDI (2834).
– The speed of the data connection may vary depending on the vehicle location, the coverage area of your cell phone service provider and if the recommended provider is used or not.
– A data connection cannot be established if incorrect data is entered in the connection settings.
– For more information on roaming charges, contact your cell phone service provider.
– The Wi-Fi hotspot reception quality depends on the signal strength and the availability of the mobile network. For more information, contact your current network provider.
– For additional information, visit **www.audiusa.com/connect**.

About Audi connect

Audi connect services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Tips

– Audi connect services are only available with an existing or separate cell phone contract and only within the mobile network coverage area. Depending on your cell phone rates, there may be additional costs when connecting to the Internet using data packets, particularly with international service. Based on the high data volume, using a flat rate data plan is highly recommended.
– You can only use services supported by Audi connect if you have the optional MMI Navigation plus equipment with MMI touch and Audi connect.
– Use of the LTE* mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information. ▶

– Using Audi connect services requires a mini SIM card with data options and, when using LTE*, it also requires LTE options.
– Usage of Audi connect services depends on the availability of services through third party providers.
– Also note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 114, Telephone*.
– Audi connect is designed for use only with the provided SIM card. Receiving data packets from the Internet will quickly increase the volume of data used. For more information, contact Audi connect customer service at 877-505-AUDI (2834).
– The Audi connect services are available in the USA. Audi connect services are currently not available in Canada or in Mexico.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates. Additional information can be found under **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.
– An initial registration/activation on the myAudi platform at **my.audiusa.com** is required to use individual services. You can contact an authorized Audi dealer or Audi connect customer service at 877-505-AUDI (2834) to receive information on options for expanding your usage and any costs that may result.
– It is only possible to use Audi connect services with a valid Audi connect SIM card.
– To ensure all of the Audi connect features work correctly, Audi recommends setting up data service and a Wi-Fi package with your network service provider. Your network service provider can be authorized by law, through a judicial order or other lawful instructions, to disclose the position of your vehicle. Additional information on your cell phone service provider's privacy policies can be found in their Terms of Use.
– The Audi connect services are a Wi-Fi/Internet-based system. If the system does not function correctly even though all of the requirements are met, please try again later or contact Audi connect customer service at 877-505-AUDI (2834).
– For detailed information on Audi connect and the Terms of Use, visit **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.

Data protection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Tips

– You can find additional information in your MMI in the options menu ⇨ *page 98* for the selected Audi connect service and also on the Internet at **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.
– Your privacy is important to us.
– AUDI AG collects, processes, shares and transmits your personal information in accordance with legal regulations in order to ensure proper function and availability of the individual Audi connect services. You can view the complete, current and valid Audi connect data protection policy in your MMI. The myAudi website is available for to you to activate additional Audi connect services and to transfer data with your vehicle, among other services. A one-time registration is required to establish a connection to your vehicle. For this purpose, AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses your required personal information as required for you to use the services provided by AUDI AG. Your information is not distributed to third parties. Using your cell phone with the help of your myAudi platform, you can transfer information for Audi connect services functions to your vehicle and allow specific information to be transmitted from your vehicle.
– By activating special information services that are part of your Audi connect portfolio, you can use these functions directly in your vehicle by entering data to confirm your identity (to use social networks, for example). To do this, the identification information you provided is forwarded with the request to the respective service provider. Then you can access your personal content ▶

8S0012721BB

using a secure connection. This content is displayed in the vehicle for your use. Your personal content is not stored within Audi AG. The necessary connection information is processed and used for providing services and the proper function of the services in accordance with applicable legal guidelines.
– By providing Audi connect services, Audi of America is authorized to collect, process, transmit and transfer information about you and your vehicle. Additional information can also be found in your MMI in the options menu ⇨ *page 98* for the selected Audi connect service.
– Information on our data protection measures in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the application's privacy policy. For additional information about the **my.audiusa.com** website or other applications, websites or online services connected to Audi, visit **www.audiusa.com/privacy**.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Problem	Solution
Audi connect services: individual Audi connect services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect services must be activated/configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at **my.audiusa.com**.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents and on alternative routes, if desired.

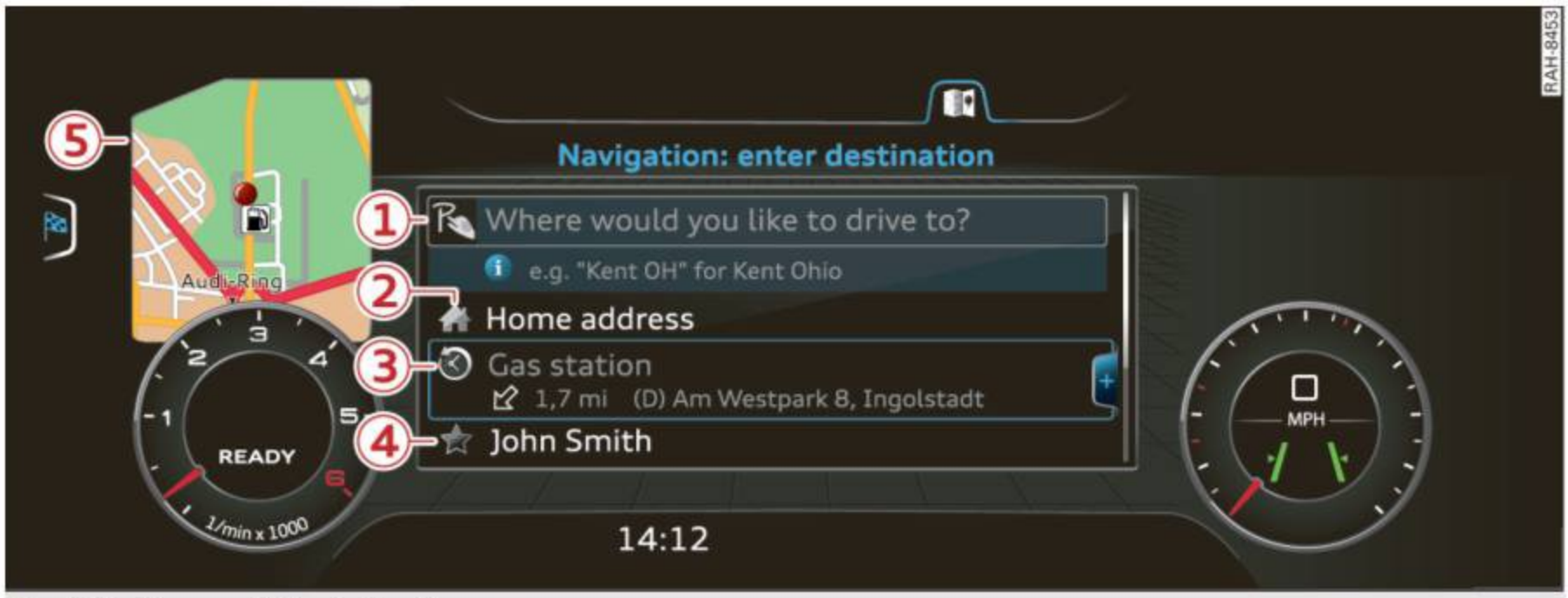


Fig. 118 Diagram: Enter destination menu

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button.

After opening the Navigation menu, the **Enter destination** menu ⇨ *fig. 118* appears in the Infotainment system display with the following information:

① Input field for free text search ⇨ *page 136*
② Home address ⇨ *page 137*
③ Last destinations ⇨ *page 136*
④ Stored favorites ⇨ *page 137*

If you have connected a cell phone with the MMI, your directory contacts will also be listed if they have navigation data assigned to them.

The **Favorites** ④ as well as the directory contacts are only shown in the **Enter destination** menu if you have entered one or more characters using the input field.

Map preview

– Select an entry from the list.

When selecting an entry from the list, the corresponding destination will always be shown to you as a map preview ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 118*.

Switching between the destination entry and the map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed. **Or**: select the left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 96, Traffic safety information*.
– Obey all traffic laws when driving.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Note

– If the driving directions conflict with traffic laws, obey the traffic laws.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the navigation system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times. ▸

8S0012721BB

Tips

– Information on importing map updates using an **SD card** in your MMI can be found in the **Audi connect (myAudi) operating manual** under **my.audiusa.com**.
– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or interference caused by trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.

Entering a destination

Free text search for destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the MMI touch control pad, you can enter the data for a navigation destination in any order all at once (for example, monument Washington). Likewise, you can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations or favorites to navigate to the desired address.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the input field appears.

– Write one or more search terms in the input field ① ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*. A list of all results found will appear in the Infotainment system display.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

The route is displayed as an overview in the map and the route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

– Select: right control button > **Country/state selection**.

All countries/states are selected at the factory for the free text search. Using the **Country/state selection**, you can deselect the irrelevant countries/states to increase the search speed and narrow the results list.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– Up to 50 entries can be stored in the last destinations list.
– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 104*.
– For additional information about entering information on the MMI touch, see ⇨ *page 98*.

Load last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your last destinations are automatically stored and can be loaded directly as a destination.

Requirement: a destination was already navigated to.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

Your last destinations will be listed directly in the **Enter destination** menu and are marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

– Select and confirm one of your last destinations.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Delete last destinations

– Select and confirm one of the last destinations from the list.
– Select: right control button > **Delete**.
– Select and confirm **Delete this last destination** or **Delete all last destinations**.

The selected destination or all last destinations is/are deleted and no longer displayed in the **enter destination** ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118* menu.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**.

– Select and confirm a line (such as **Street**, **House number** or **Country/state**) and enter the desired information.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A point on the map can be used as the destination.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

– **Adjusting the scale**: turn the control knob to the left/right to decrease the map scale.
– **Activating crosshairs**: press the control knob. The crosshairs are shown on the map.
– **Moving the crosshairs**: move the crosshairs to the destination using the MMI touch control pad.
– **Setting as destination**: press the control knob when the crosshairs are shown. If necessary, select and confirm **Add as stopover** and then **Start route guidance**.
– **Hiding the crosshairs**: press the BACK button.

Additional information about the location of the crosshairs: if you select map content with crosshairs, the available information is displayed (such as the name of the city or points of interest) ⑥ ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

Setting a home address/favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can quickly and easily start route guidance to your home address using the home address function. Favorites allow easier access to frequently used destinations.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

Setting a home address as the destination

Requirement: a home address must be stored ⇨ *page 141*.

Your home address is directly shown in the **Enter destination** menu ② ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

– Select and confirm the home address.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a favorite as the destination

Requirement: a destination must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 141*.

– Enter one or more letters into the free text search input field. The favorites that are found are shown in the Infotainment system display and marked with the symbol ④ ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
– Select and confirm the desired favorite.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Tips

– Additional settings for the home address can be found under ⇨ *page 141*.
– Additional settings for the favorites can be found under ⇨ *page 141*.

Transferring a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can navigate directly to destinations in the directory.

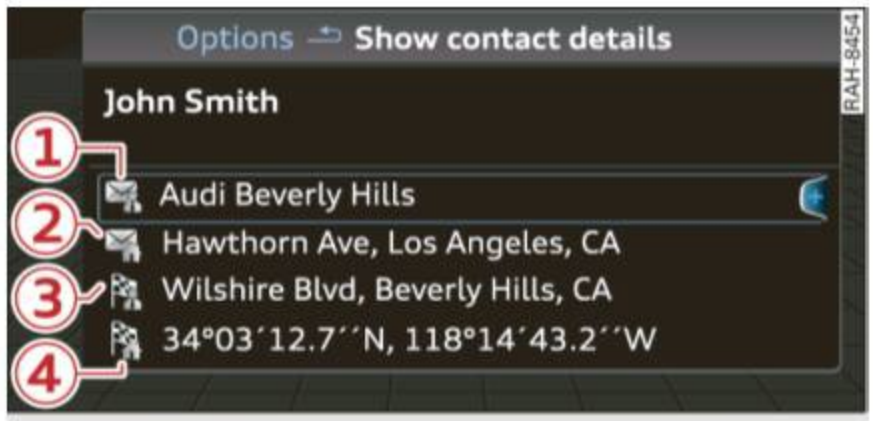


Fig. 119 Possible stored locations in the directory

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a destination must already be assigned to a contact.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

The directory/contacts are shown in alphabetical order and are marked with symbols to indicate the storage location:

① Business address
② Private address
③ Business destination
④ Private destination

– Select and confirm an address or a destination. When you have selected a destination, route guidance starts immediately.
– Check the address input again when selecting an address.
– Then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional directory functions in the navigation system can be found under ⇨ *page 141*.

Tips

– Addresses that have been imported from your cell phone into the MMI can also be used as a destination.
– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact does not have a destination or an address assigned to them.

Entering a point of interest

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

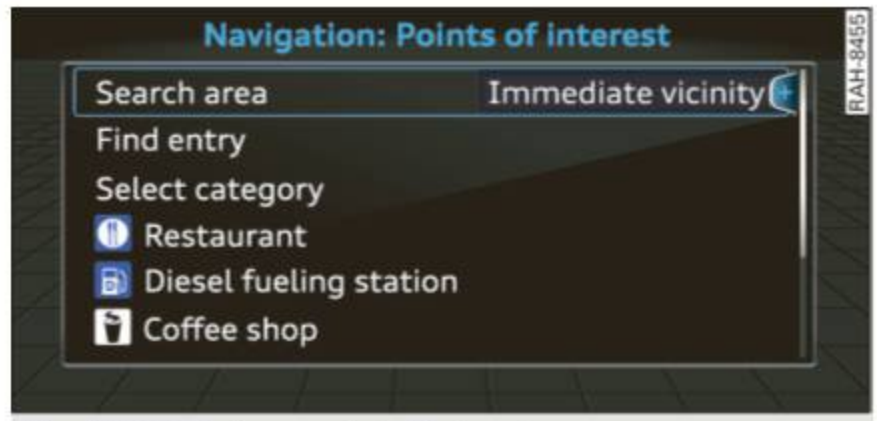


Fig. 120 Entering a point of interest

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Points of interest**.

– **Changing the search area**: select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **Searching for a point of interest in a specific category**: select: **Select category** > *desired category*, such as **Restaurants**.

The following search categories are available:

Nearby: points of interest can be selected from different categories. The points of interest are listed starting from the vehicle position up to a radius of approximately 124 miles (200 km).

Along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route.

Near destination/Near stopover: the points of interest can likewise be selected from different categories in the vicinity of the destination or stopover. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

In new city: enter the name of the desired city. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function allows you to search for points of interest in any city regardless of the active route guidance or the vehicle position. ▶

Tips

– Distances to points of interest are shown as a straight-line distance from the vehicle position. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of found points of interest is not resorted when this happens.
– There may be entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely due to their length. If you select these list entries using the control knob, detailed information about the selected list entry will be shown automatically after several seconds.

Point of interest online search

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

You can search for points of interest on the Internet.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 126*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area last set is shown in the input field.

– **Changing the search area**: select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **Searching for online destinations in the selected search area**: enter a new city if necessary. Enter a search term such as restaurant. Select and confirm an online destination. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.
– **Searching for an online destination in a specific category**: select: **Select category** > *desired category*, such as **Hotels**.

Find which search areas are available under ⇨ *page 138, Entering a point of interest*.

You can search for online destinations using the voice recognition system ⇨ *table on page 110*.

Tips

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132*.
– Additional information can be found under **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**

Accessing destinations from your myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

Import destinations from your myAudi account into the MMI.

Requirement: you must have a registered myAudi account at **my.audiusa.com**. You must have a vehicle stored in your myAudi account and you must have a destination stored.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
▸ Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
▸ If necessary, enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN. The contacts stored in myAudi are displayed.

– Select and confirm a contact > *desired destination*.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Tips

– You only need to enter the myAudi user data one time.
– You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account. For additional information, see **my.audiusa.com**.

Entering a destination using geo coordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Geo coordinates**.

– Select and confirm either **Latitude** or **Longitude**.
– Turn the control knob to change the latitude/longitude.
– Press the control knob to confirm your input.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Adding a stopover

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter an additional destination when route guidance is active.



Fig. 121 Example: current route guidance with stopover

Requirement: a destination must already be entered.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

Entering a destination as a stopover

– Enter a destination in the input line ① ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
– Select and confirm **Add as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

– Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown.
– Select and confirm **Delete stopover** ⇨ *fig. 121* under the stopover ①. Select and confirm the system prompt if necessary. The stopover is deleted.

Additional options when entering a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the selected function, the following options may be available when entering a destination:

Cancel route guidance: Requirement: route guidance must be active. Route guidance is canceled. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 140*.

Map settings: see ⇨ *page 145*.

Navigation settings: see ⇨ *page 141*.

Voice guidance: see ⇨ *page 142*.

Route criteria: see ⇨ *page 142*.

Show location on map: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered is displayed on the map.

Parking at this location: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. All parking options near the selected location are displayed in the Infotainment system.

Delete: the selected entry is deleted. You can delete individual entries or all entries (for example, favorites or last destinations).

Audi connect at this location[1)]: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. Allows you to search for items in the vicinity of the selected location, such as **City events** or **Travel information**.

Online traffic data*: receiving online traffic information ⇨ *page 147* can be switched on or off.

Country/state selection: select all countries/states from the list (☑) that should be included in the free text search ⇨ *page 136*.

Store as favorite: see ⇨ *page 141*.

Cancel route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- ▸ Push the control knob up. The active route guidance is displayed ⇨ *page 140, fig. 121*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Delete destination** or **Delete stopover** under the desired lines ⇨ *page 140, fig. 121*. The destination is deleted. **Or**: select the right control button > **Cancel route guidance**.

1) This function is not offered in Mexico.

Home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

Storing a home address

– Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*. After opening the home address for the first time, you will be asked to create a home address.
– Select and confirm **Create now**.
– Enter a destination or select a destination from the list. **Or**:
– Select and confirm a destination > right control button > **Store as home address**.

A home address will be stored in the MMI regardless of the connected cell phone. This home address is always available even if a cell phone is not connected to the MMI.

Editing the home address

– Select **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
– Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
– Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination is stored as the new home address.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

– **Storing an existing destination as a favorite**: search for the desired destination using the input field. **Or**: select and confirm a destination from the list. Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
– **Renaming favorites**: select: left control button > **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favorite**.
– **Moving favorites**: select the left control button > **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the desired position.
– **Deleting favorites**: select and confirm a favorite > right control button > **Delete this favorite** / **Delete all favorites**.

Directory contacts

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be assigned as destinations for each contact in the directory.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI.

– Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
– Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.
– Enter a name. **Or**: select and confirm a directory contact from the list.
– Select and confirm **Save business card**.

Additional settings

Navigation settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Show alternative routes

Up to three route suggestions and their properties are displayed on the overview map when the function is switched on ☑. See ⇨ *page 142, Displaying alternative routes*. ▶

8S0012721BB

Low fuel warning

A message is displayed if the fuel gauge goes below the reserve marking when this function is switched on ☑. Confirming this message displays a list of gas stations in the area. When a gas station is selected, route guidance from the current vehicle position is calculated.

Notification when nearby*

The notification when nearby is switched off at the factory.

The MMI notifies you when you are approaching selected points of interest when this function is switched on ☑. You can also have a **Notification tone**.

Presentation mode

The presentation mode helps you to plan and follow a route without moving the vehicle. You can **Select starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position. Start presentation mode to simulate route guidance.

Route criteria

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

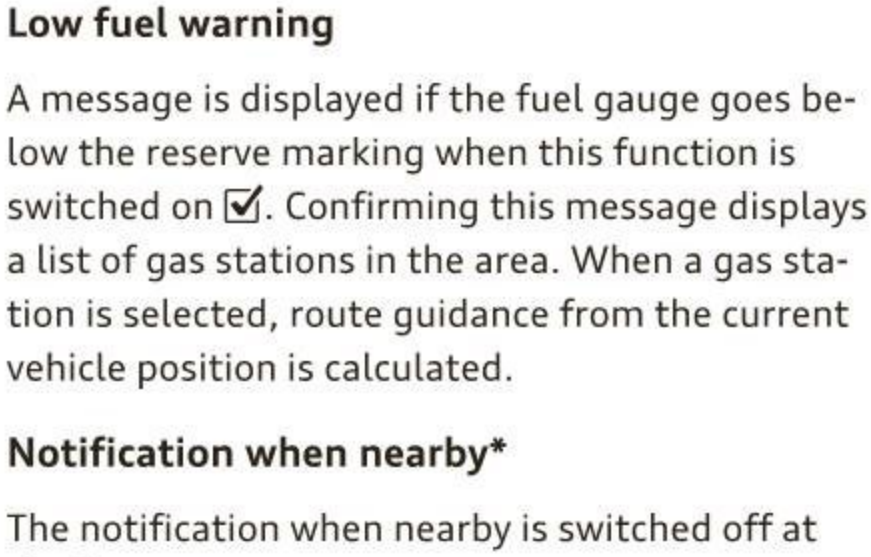


Fig. 122 Possible route criteria

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

① **HOV lanes/carpool lanes**[1)]: when the **Avoid** function is switched on, HOV lanes or carpool lanes are not included in the route calculation.

With **allow**, the MMI will guide you using HOV and carpool lanes and it will indicate them.

②**Highways**/ ③**Toll roads**/ ④**Ferries**: if the navigation system should not include highways, toll roads or ferries - if possible - when calculating routes, you can select the **Avoid** function.

Voice guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: voice guidance can be **complete** or **shortened**. With the **Traffic** function, voice guidance prompts are only given when there are traffic incidents on your route. When **Off** is selected, no voice guidance is given.

Voice guidance during phone call: voice guidance during a phone call can be switched on or off.

Entertainment fader: ⇨ *page 178*.

Voice guidance volume: ⇨ *page 178*.

Displaying alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 123 Alternative routes display

Requirement: a destination must be entered and the route guidance must be started.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

1) High occupancy vehicle

▸ Select: right control button > **Show alternative routes**.

Up to three route suggestions and their properties are displayed on the map when this function is switched on ⇨ *fig. 123*.

If available, the following information will appear on the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast ①, fast alternative ②, economic route ③)
– Distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time
– Heavy traffic along the route including time delays

The route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected is shown on the map. The special properties of the route (such as ferry connections) may be displayed ④ ⇨ *fig. 123*. Additional information about individual route criteria can be found in ⇨ *page 142*.

Using the control knob, you can select the possible routing for the alternative routes and show them on map Select and confirm the desired route that you would like to use for route guidance.

Map

Operating the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 124 Diagram: map with crosshairs turned on

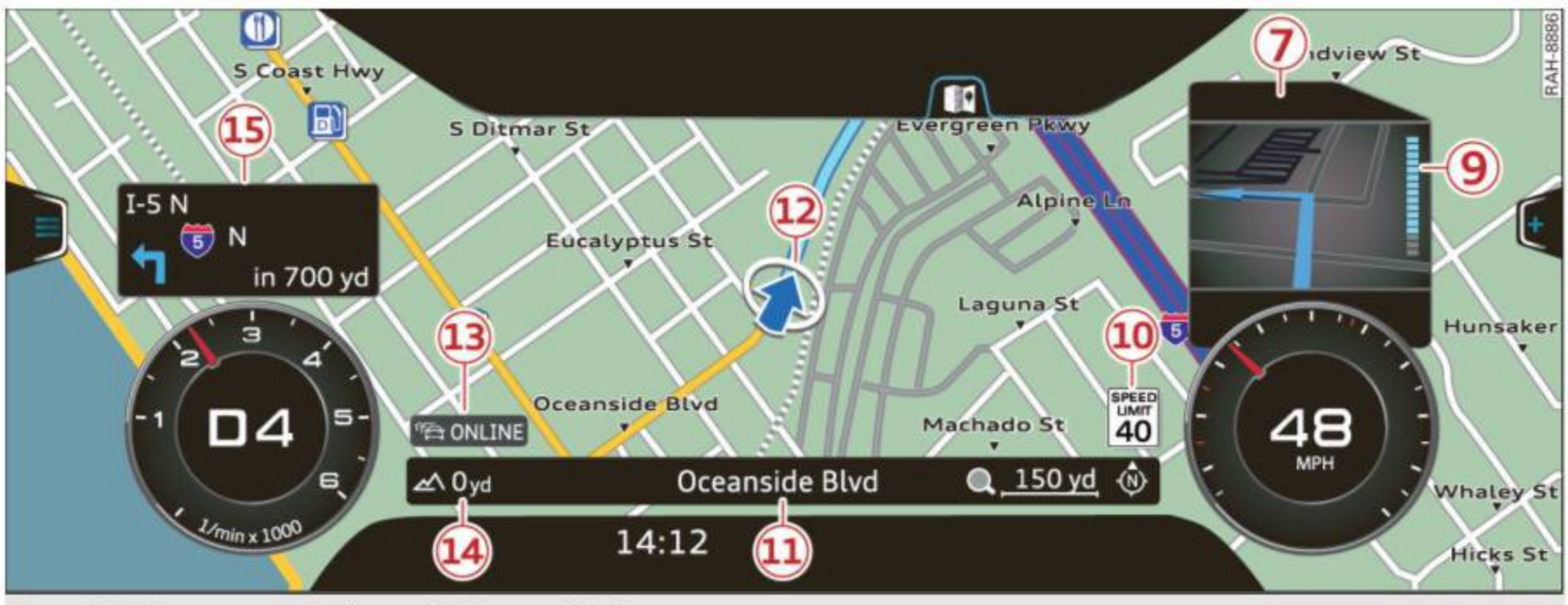


Fig. 125 Diagram: map with crosshairs turned off

8S0012721BB

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *fig. 125*.

Zooming in/out on the map

– Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. As an alternative, you can also zoom in/out on the map using the MMI touch ⇨ *page 100*. **Or**: turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel*⇨ *page 20*.

Turning the crosshairs on/off

– **Switching the crosshairs on**: press the control knob in the map view.
– **Switching the crosshairs off**: press the BACK button.

When the crosshairs are switched on ⇨ *fig. 124*:

① Orientation: the map is either displayed as a **2D north up map** or a **2D heading up map**.
② Scale: turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale.
③ Zoom: when the **Automatic zoom** function is switched on, an "A" for "Automatic" is displayed in the magnifying glass.
④ Crosshairs: move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch control pad and set a point on the map as the destination or have information about the focal point displayed.
⑤ Map content (points of interest, favorites): if there are multiple POIs in the immediate vicinity, they will be shown stacked on the map.
⑥ Additional information on the crosshairs position: if you move the crosshairs to a location on the map, available information for the current crosshairs position is displayed. Press the control knob to open destination details or to start route guidance. When the crosshairs are turned off, the road being currently driven on is shown.
⑦ Display of an upcoming maneuver. If there is no upcoming maneuver, the distance and calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover is displayed in this location.
⑧ Display of a better route. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 149*.

When the crosshairs are switched off ⇨ *fig. 125*:

⑨ If a turn arrow is displayed, a bar graph turns on. The fewer bars are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.
⑩ Speed limit display[1)]: display of the maximum permitted speed on the expressways and highways.
⑪ Road currently being driven on. When the vehicle is stationary, "offroad" is displayed here.
⑫ Vehicle location
⑬ Display of active traffic information (ONLINE* or TMC)
⑭ Altitude display
⑮ Route information: various information will be displayed during active route guidance (for example, the upcoming maneuver including calculated distance and street names). The display also provides traffic information or points of interest on the current route.

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 143, fig. 125*.
▸ Select: left control button > *desired function*.

Switch to destination input

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 135, fig. 118*.

Traffic messages

Current traffic information is displayed in the Infotainment system display. See ⇨ *page 147*.

Route list

The route list can only be displayed when route guidance is active and contains information regarding the route, the names of the streets and the length of the route sections. When traveling ▶

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

on highways, possible parking lots and rest areas are shown, which you can select as a stopover.

POIs along the route

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

Searching for points of interest along your current route See ⇨ *page 138*.

Additional options on the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 143, fig. 125*.
- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function selected, the following options can also be selected under the **Map** menu:

Cancel route guidance: see ⇨ *page 140*.

Map settings: see ⇨ *page 145*.

Route criteria: see ⇨ *page 142*.

Voice guidance: see ⇨ *page 142*.

Navigation settings: see ⇨ *page 141*.

Online traffic data*: see ⇨ *page 147*.

Show alternative routes: see ⇨ *page 142*.

Parking along the route: parking options near the vehicle are displayed.

Save current position: you can save your current vehicle position as a favorite ⇨ *page 141* or save it as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 141*.

Audi connect at this location*: allows you to search for **City events** or **Weather** at the entered location.

Country information: you can display the applicable urban and rural speed limits for any country/state. This information will be automatically shown to you in the route information (15) ⇨ *page 143, fig. 125* when the speed limit is exceeded, if this function is activated ⇨ *page 146*.

Avoid route*: when route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified (maximum: 12 mi (20 km)), if possible. The navigation system calculates an alternative route. The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed. The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

Map settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 143, fig. 125*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Map colors

Day/Night: the map is displayed with a light/dark background.

Automatic: when the lights switch on, the map colors switch from day to night.

Map display

Standard ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

Google Earth* ⇨ *page 146, fig. 126*.

Traffic ⇨ *page 147*.

Map orientation

Destination: the map indicates the destination and is oriented to the north.

2D heading up map/2D north up map: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.

3D map: when this function is switched on, the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and oriented in the direction of travel. At a scale of 62 mi (100 km) and larger, the map orientation is to the north.

Overview: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale depends on the length of the route and adapts automatically. The map is oriented to the north. ▸

Route information

The display of route information such as the current road being driven on, upcoming maneuvers, traffic information or points of interest along the route can be switched on/off.

Automatic zoom

On: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. The scale is also automatically adapted when there are upcoming maneuvers to provide a better detailed view.

Off: the map scale you have chosen is kept.

Map content

Map content, such as traffic information, favorites or restaurants, can be displayed or hidden (☑).

Online map display

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

With the online map view, you can display the map with satellite images.

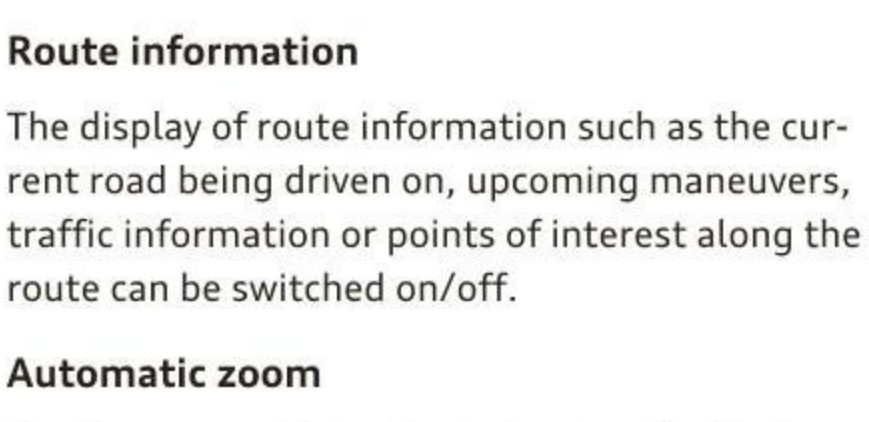


Fig. 126 Online map view

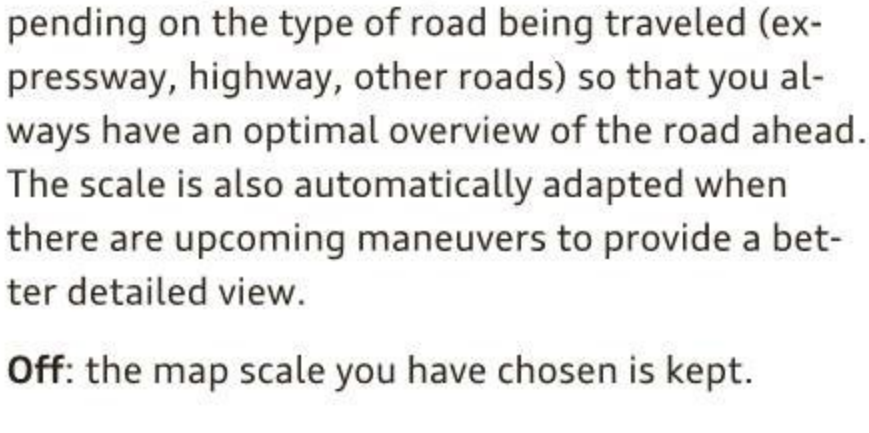


Fig. 127 Map view with online Street View

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 126*.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Google Earth**.

The map display is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the **Standard** map view. There are two gigabytes of memory space in the MMI memory that can be used to temporarily store the map or navigation data that was received. This is roughly the amount required for the map/navigation data for a 2,485 mile (4,000 km) route. As long as the satellite images loaded for route guidance are stored, you can use them without having an active data connection.

Street View

With Street View, you can explore many places in the world through the eyes of a pedestrian. Street View is available when the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 126* is displayed in the crosshairs mode.

Activating street view: turn the control knob to a scale less than 32 yards (30 m).

The following functions are then available:

– **Exploring an area step-by-step**: press the control knob when the symbol ② is displayed.
– **Zooming in or out on the current view in four stages**: turn the control knob to the left or to the right ③.
– **Navigating in street view**: move your finger on the MMI touch in the desired direction.

Additional information

Showing additional information in the Infotainment system display can be switched on in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 146*. To display any applicable additional information, move the crosshairs onto an item on the map and press the control knob.

Tips

– The stored online map view data can be deleted in **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨ *page 175*. ▶

– The online map view is an Audi connect service and is regularly updated when the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
– When the online map view is switched on using the 3D map orientation, the MMI display automatically switches to the 2D map orientation when driving through tunnels.
– For safety reasons, the Street View functions can only be used when the vehicle is stationary.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132*.

– Additional information can be found under **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.

Accessing traffic information

Auto rerouting (traffic)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

When receiving traffic information through TMC/online - depending on availability - you can have the MMI navigate you around traffic incidents, if possible.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the TMC or ONLINE symbol on the map ⇨ *page 147, fig. 128*.

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi connect

The MMI can receive real-time traffic information about congestion accidents, road construction and other incidents from the Internet.



Fig. 128 Example: online traffic information display* without better route

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 126*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Online traffic data** > *On* (☑).
- ▸ Select: left control button > Traffic messages. The traffic information overview is shown.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following information may be shown in the traffic information overview ⇨ *fig. 128*:

① A message will appear if the MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 149*.

② The status line in the Infotainment display indicates the reception of traffic information (TMC or ONLINE).

③ The current selected traffic message is also shown as a map preview in the Infotainment system display. ▶

8S0012721BB

④ Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow ④.

Traffic display

Green: traffic is flowing freely

Red: congestion

Orange: stop-and-go traffic

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

Colored warning symbols: there is a traffic incident immediately ahead on the route.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route.

Red warning symbols: all warning symbols will be red when route guidance is not active.

The display of colored markings, warning symbols, etc. can be set in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 146*

You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time ⇨ *page 147*.

Switching the traffic map display on

For an optimum traffic information display: NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Traffic**.

You can also display the **online traffic information** in the online map view ⇨ *page 146* or in the standard map view ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

Tips

– Online traffic information is not available in Canada.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132, About Audi connect*.
– Every vehicle with the **Online traffic data** function switched on has the most accurate reports of traffic situations as well as traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. If you do not want to use this, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.
– The **online traffic information** network is currently not available in all countries, and the coverage is not nationwide. Additional information can be found under **www.audiusa.com/audiconnect**.

Traffic information (TMC)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

TMC traffic messages are switched on at the factory.

Multiple traffic messages are summarized in the overview under the corresponding street names or highway names.

– **Displaying all traffic messages for a street/highway**: select and confirm the symbol. A list of all the traffic messages for the selected street/highway is displayed.
– **Opening the detailed view of a traffic message**: if you select an entry from the list, the traffic information will be shown as a map preview ③ ⇨ *page 147, fig. 128*. Select and confirm a traffic message to display the details for that message.
– **Displaying the selected traffic message on the map**: select and confirm the right control button > **Show on map**.
– **Displaying the next traffic message on the map**: press the control knob.

Traffic information display

Colored warning symbols: traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list and are sorted according to distance.

Warning symbols with ⮌: avoided traffic incidents.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route. They are sorted according to road type (expressway, highway, other road), country and name.

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion. ▶

Tips

Critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the control knob.

– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. For more information, please contact Sirius Canada.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information through TMC, your MMI calculates a better route - if available - and the possible time saved for the current route guidance. You can decide yourself which route you would like to use.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

Requirement:

Route guidance must be active.

If your MMI has calculated a better route than the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** appears on the map along with the time that may be saved. A better route is indicated in the map view by the symbol ⑧ ⇨ *page 143, fig. 124*.

Accept better route

Requirement: the symbol must be shown on the map.

– Press the right control button.
– Select and confirm the better route.
– The better route is used for the remaining route guidance and the route is recalculated.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Problem	Solution
Free text search: the desired destination cannot be found.	The destination might not be entered in the navigation database. **Or**: check the spelling of the search term and whether the right country/state was selected using the **Country/state selection**⇨ *page 136* for the free text search.

Radio

Opening the radio

The radio supports the FM, AM and SiriusXM (satellite radio) bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.*



Fig. 129 FM station list (HD Radio technology FM)



Fig. 130 SiriusXM station list

► Press the RADIO button.

After opening the radio, the last opened station list is displayed.

Selecting a station: select and confirm a station from the station list. FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 129*. If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability. Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. The available additional stations* are listed under the radio station. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

Setting the frequency band: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set.

Updating the station list: station lists are updated automatically.

The following information is displayed in the station lists:

① Favorites

The station is stored as a preset. The symbol shows the stored location in the presets list (for example, 21).

② Radio text (shortened display)

If available, program information about the set station is displayed in all of the station lists.

③ Frequency

④ Station name

⑤ Channel number

If there is a loss of radio signal (SiriusXM*), the following system information is displayed in the station list:

NoSignal: the tuner is currently not receiving a satellite signal Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 130*.

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

- Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
- Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
- Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
- iTunes tagging* is not supported by all radio stations.

Radio functions

Free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field. Search in all frequency bands for a station name or program type such as **News***).*



Fig. 131 Input field and results list for free text search

– **Opening the free text search**: when in a station list, keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field is displayed.
– **Using the free text search**: see ⇨ *page 104, Free text search*.

You can also search for frequencies.

Stations from the presets list ③ are displayed in the results list ①⇨ *fig. 131* The symbol ② indicates which station list you switched to based on the station selection.

Additional options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button.

The following options are available depending on the frequency band:

– **Sound settings**: ⇨ *page 178*.
– **Store as preset**: see ⇨ *page 152, Favorites*.
– **Delete all entries**: all entries are deleted in the **Last stations** view.

– **Tag this song for iTunes***[1)]: connect your Apple device with the Audi music interface* on your MMI. Select and confirm **Tag this song for iTunes**. The track that is currently playing is stored on your Apple device. Synchronize your Apple device with iTunes. The tagged track will display the next time you open your iTunes media center. If there is no Apple device connected, the tagged track are stored temporarily in the MMI (maximum of 50 tracks). Once you connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface, the tags are stored on the device.

– **Manual station tuning**: the frequency bars are displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.
– **Seek**: the radio tunes to the previous or next receivable station.
– **Scan**: all stations are played for several seconds each.
– **Radio settings**: ⇨ *page 153*.

Radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > a frequency band (such as **FM**) > a station.
▸ Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

Browsing through radio text entries: turn the control knob to the left or right.

Requirement: a radio text entry must be displayed and the station must be broadcasting a phone number, a navigation destination or a text message number as Radio Text Plus information.

If a location, a phone number or a text message number is included with a radio text entry, the radio text will be shown with a colored border. You have the following options:

Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message*:

– Select a radio text entry with Radio Text Plus information and press the control knob.
– Select and confirm **Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***. **Or**: press the BACK button to cancel.

Tips

The availability of radio text and Radio Text Plus depends on the radio station.

[1)] In preparation at the time of printing.

View: additional station information



Fig. 132 Radio view: additional station information

Requirement: you must be tuned to a radio station. The **Show "Now Playing" screen** option is switched on ⇨ *page 153*.

Symbols in the additional station information view ⇨ *fig. 132*:

① Radio text availability

Radio text is available for the selected station. See ⇨ *page 151*.

② iTunes tagging

The **Tag this song for iTunes** option is available for the set station. See ⇨ *page 151, Additional options*.

③ FM HD Radio technology

The station is received through FM HD Radio technology.

④ Screen view

Display **Cover art** or **Station logo**. See ⇨ *page 153*.

Displaying a station list: turn the control knob. **Or**: press the BACK button.

Radio menu

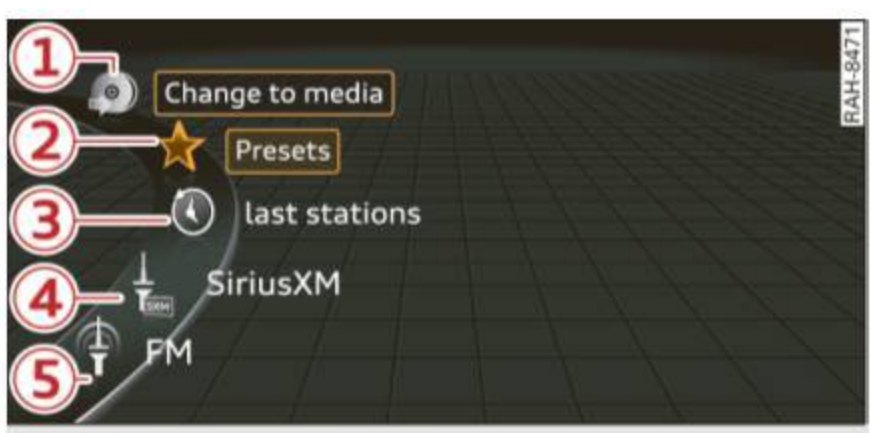


Fig. 133 Example: Radio menu

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button.

Setting the frequency band: select and confirm the desired frequency band in the radio menu ⇨ *fig. 133*. **Or**: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set. The station list is displayed.

① Switch to media

The **Media** menu is displayed. See ⇨ *page 163, Playing media*.

② Favorites

The presets list is displayed. See ⇨ *page 152, Favorites*.

③ Last stations

The last stations listened to from all frequency bands are shown in the list. Select and confirm a station for immediate playback.

④ SiriusXM*

The **SiriusXM*** station list is displayed.

⑤ FM

The FM station list is displayed.

Additional frequency bands

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can select additional frequency bands in the selection menu ⇨ *fig. 133*.

Favorites

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list.

▸ Select: the RADIO button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the presets. list must be displayed.

– **Storing presets**: select and confirm *a free preset space*. Follow the system instructions.
– Select and confirm *a station from the list* if necessary.

Requirement: a station list must be displayed.

– **Storing presets**: select: *an entry from the list* > right control button > **Store as preset**. **Or**: press and hold the control knob for several seconds. ▶

– **Displaying the presets list**: select: RADIO button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

– **Listening to presets**: select and confirm *a preset from the list*.
– **Move preset**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move preset**. **Or**: press and hold the control knob for several seconds. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting presets**: select *a preset from the list* > right control button > **Delete preset** > **Delete this preset** or **Delete all presets**.

Additional settings

Radio settings

► Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

The following settings can be selected, depending on the band that is selected:

FM/AM HD Radio*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

Station sorting (SiriusXM*)

You can set the station sorting for SiriusXM station lists* by:

– **Channel number**: the stations are sorted in ascending order according to their station number.
– **Channel name**: the stations are listed in alphabetical order.
– **First category, then channel number**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel numbers.
– **First the category, then the channel name**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

Category filter (SiriusXM*)

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. Select the **All categories** option to deactivate all filter options and display all available stations in the satellite station list.

Additional station information

When the function is switched on ☑ and station or presets lists are open, the display will switch after approximately five seconds to the **Show "Now Playing" screen** view ⇨ *page 152*. Depending on availability, information about the set station (such as station name, artist, slide show, station logo) is displayed in this view.

Preferred picture view

You can set your preferred picture view for the **Show "Now Playing" screen** display ⇨ *page 152*.

– **Station logo**: the station logo is displayed, depending on availability.
– **Cover art**: the album cover or genre cover is displayed, depending on availability.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **Cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 153,* **Preferred picture view**.

When the function is switched on ☑, the album cover or genre cover for the song that is playing is loaded from the Gracenote online database, depending on availability.

Subscription status (SiriusXM)*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

Call to SiriusXM*: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call to SiriusXM***.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
A station with poor reception is no longer displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station.	Store the station as a favorite in advance. Access the favorite through the favorites list ⇨ *page 152*.

Media

Introduction

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. You can play, for example, audio/video files from the Jukebox* or connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI.

Notes

General information

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media on the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video* files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions or may not play at all.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol.

Data security: never store important data on SD cards, the Jukebox*, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. Audi AG is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists that are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load the audio/video files*. Audi recommends using storage media that only contain audio/video files*. To decrease the time it takes to load audio/video files*, create subfolders (for example, for the artist or album). The loading time will also increase when importing files.

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Restricted functionality: reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 175*.

Reset the Jukebox * to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 175*.

For information about the properties of supported media and file formats, see ⇨ *page 168*.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

CD/DVD operation

CD/DVD and format restrictions: the functionality of individual storage media may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audi CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

Using CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive: to ensure correct, high-quality playback and to prevent damage to the drive or disc reading errors, always store CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs (3 inch/8 cm diameter)
– CD/DVDs that are not round
– CDs/DVDs with labels
– Protective rings
– Cleaning CDs

Thermal protection switch: CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal ▶

protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.

Laser devices: laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/VDE 0837. The various types of audio equipment installed conform to safety class 1. The laser uses so little power or is shielded so there is no danger when it is used correctly.

Media drives

SD card reader

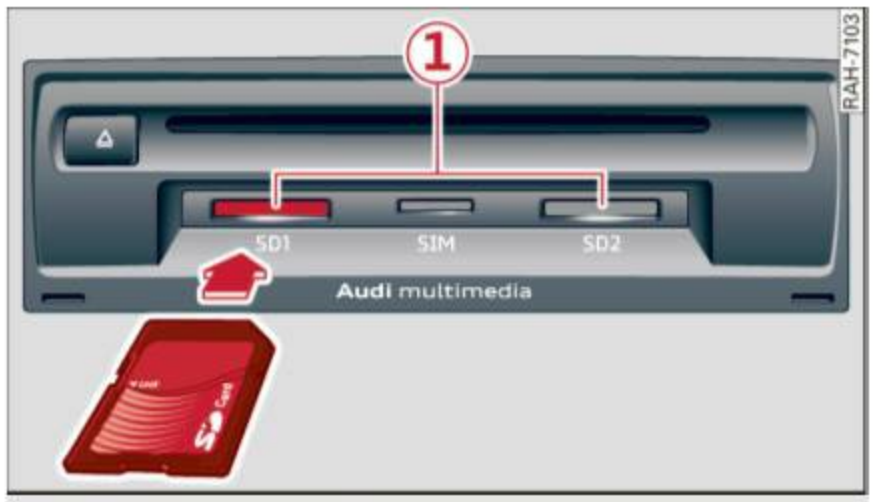


Fig. 134 Inserting the SD card

The SD card reader is located in the glove compartment (19) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

– **Inserting the SD card**: the angled corner of the SD card must face toward the right front. Slide the SD card into the card reader slot (1) ⇨ *fig. 134* until the SD card clicks into place.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted SD card contains supported audio/video files ⇨ *page 168*.
– **Removing the SD card**: press briefly on the SD card.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI (3) ⇨ *page 163, fig. 139*.

Note

Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.

Tips

Always keep the SD card in a suitable case to protect it from dirt, dust particles and other damage.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

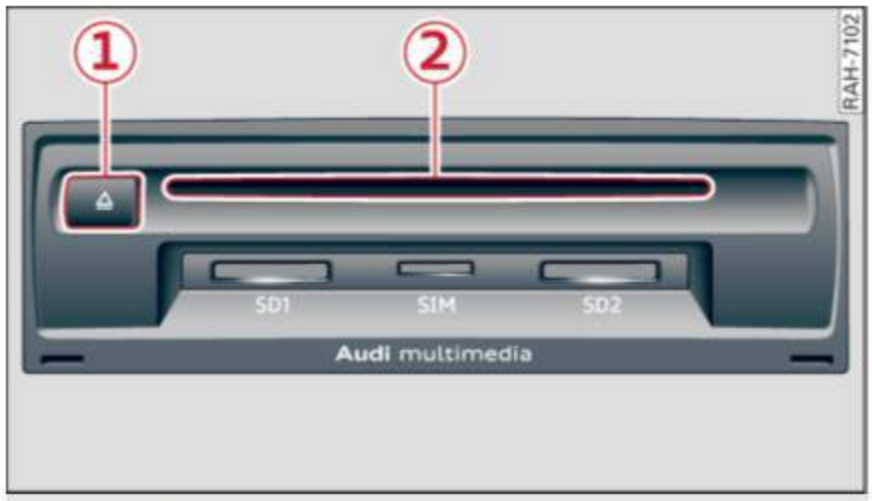


Fig. 135 DVD drive

The DVD drive is located in the glove compartment (19) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

– **Loading a CD/DVD**: the CD/DVD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot (2) with the label facing up ⇨ *fig. 135*.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD/DVD contains supported audio/video* files ⇨ *page 168*.
– **Ejecting a CD/DVD**: press the button (1) ⇨ *fig. 135*.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI (2) ⇨ *page 163, fig. 139*.

Note

– Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Tips

The CD/DVD playback is not ensured with audio files that have a high data rate.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

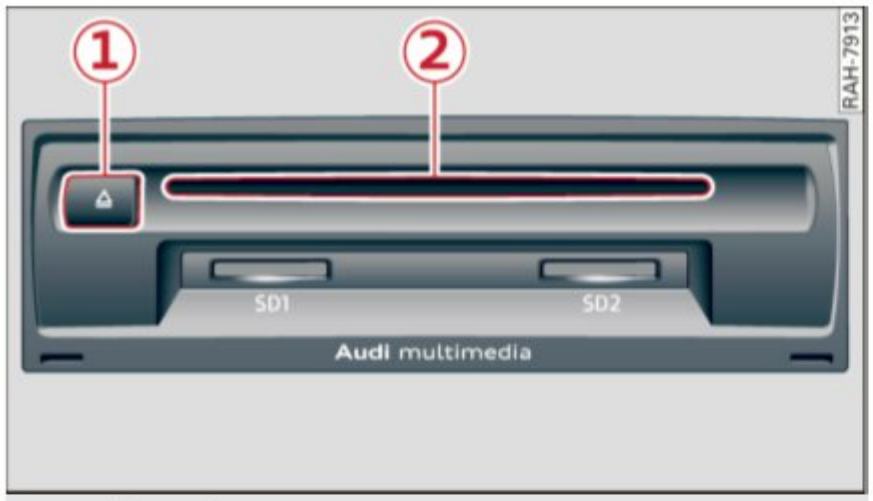


Fig. 136 CD drive

The CD drive is located in the glove compartment (19) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

– **Loading a CD**: the CD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD straight into the slot (2) with the label facing up ⇨ *fig. 136*.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD contains supported audio files ⇨ *page 169, CD drive*.
– **Ejecting a CD**: press the button (1) ⇨ *fig. 136*. The CD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the slot within ten seconds of ejecting it.

The CD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 163, Playing media*.

Note

– Never force a CD into the drive. The CD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD and damage the drive.

Tips

CD playback cannot be guaranteed with audio files that have a high data rate.

Jukebox

Applies to: vehicles with Jukebox

After you have filled the Jukebox with music and/or videos, for example from your SD card, you can play these files directly from the Jukebox. The Jukebox memory capacity is approximately 10 GB.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 163* is displayed. Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

Adding files to the Jukebox

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 163* is displayed. Select one of the following sources to copy to the Jukebox: SD card, CD-ROM, DVD-ROM*, USB storage device*.

Requirement: the media center (for example, tracks, albums) must be open.

– **Selecting an entry**: select an entry from the media center. Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Requirement: the playlist must be open. See ⇨ *page 165*.

– **Selecting a track**: select the track that is currently playing. Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox** > **This track** or **Entire album** or **This artist**.

Requirement: a video file must be playing.

– Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox**.

The copying process begins. The status of the copying process is shown in the MMI.

– **Hiding the importing process**: select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The importing process is hidden.
– **Canceling the importing process**: select and confirm **Cancel copying**: **Or**: remove the source that is being imported. Files already copied remain.

Requirement: the copying process must be active in the background.

– **Showing the copying process**: select: right control button > **Copying in progress**. ▶

When importing, the audio files are automatically sorted into the media center categories based on the stored additional information ⇨ *page 164*. The copied video files are stored in the media center under the **Videos** category.

Playing the Jukebox

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 157, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

The Jukebox is accessed and operated through the MMI ① ⇨ *page 163, fig. 139*.

Displaying Jukebox memory capacity

Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information about the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks is displayed.

Deleting tracks from the Jukebox[1)]

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Deleting an entry**: select an entry from the Jukebox media center. Select: right control button > **Delete from Jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.
– The status of the deleting process is shown in the MMI. Jukebox playback stops during the deleting process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Note

Do not import audio/video files when the engine is turned off because this will drain the vehicle battery.

Tips

– Tracks from audio CDs cannot be imported to the Jukebox for legal reasons.
– Files that have already been imported are automatically recognized and cannot be copied to the Jukebox again.
– It is not possible to play audio/video* files in the CD/DVD* drive while importing them.
– The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
– Files or tracks without stored additional information are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends adding additional information (such as ID3 tags) to audio files.
– Reset the Jukebox to the factory default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 175*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly from your Bluetooth-capable device (such as a cell phone) through the MMI.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the Bluetooth function on your Bluetooth device and the **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 176* in the MMI must both be switched on.

– **Connecting** a **Bluetooth device**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the source overview is displayed. Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** ⑥ ⇨ *page 163, fig. 140*.
– If necessary, select and confirm, **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The Bluetooth device search starts. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
– Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection.
– Select and confirm **Yes**.
– Enter the PIN for connecting on your Bluetooth device. **Or**: if the PIN is already displayed on your Bluetooth device, confirm it in the Bluetooth device and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

The media is started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used.

Tips

– Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device. ▶

1) Not in the **Playback** view.

– Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one mobile device can be active.
– Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP are supported.
– Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
– The supported media functions (such as shuffle) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
– For more information on the supported devices, visit **www.audi.com/bluetooth** or contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Wi-Fi audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

Using the Wi-Fi audio player media source on the MMI, you can connect and operate your Wi-Fi-capable media player (such as a smartphone) to wirelessly play music from your media player library. The media player is connected through the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. A UPnP Server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on your media player is required to access your media player library.

Requirement: the Wi-Fi function on your media player must be switched on. The **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app must be installed on your media player. **Or**: you must be using a media player with an integrated UPnP/DLNA server.

– **Connecting a media player**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 163* is displayed. Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** (7) ⇨ *page 163, fig. 140*.
– If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi off** > **Turn on Wi-Fi** to activate Wi-Fi in the MMI. Select **Wi-Fi settings**, if necessary. Select the same settings on the wireless media player that are used for the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Starting the Wi-Fi audio player**: start the **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app. **Or**: allow media sharing on your media player.

Operating the media player: the media player is operated through the MMI.

– Press the left control button repeatedly until the **Folders** menu item appears. Select and confirm **Folders**.
– **Playing music from the media player**: select and confirm **Media center**.

Web radio: see ⇨ *page 160*.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 197*.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

– The Wi-Fi connection is reconfigured when inserting or removing the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*. There may be a temporary interruption in audio playback, depending on the media player.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132, About Audi connect*.
– Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 126*.
– To avoid interruptions during playback, deactivate the power saving function on the media player or connect it to a charger. ▶

8S0012721BB

– The loading times for the audio data depend on the media player used and the number of files that it contains.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are displayed in the MMI.
– Songs downloaded for offline use using music streaming services are stored on your mobile device (such as a smartphone) and may be DRM protected. The Wi-Fi audio player will not play DRM protected files.
– Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information on the Wi-Fi audio player.

Online media and Internet radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can playback and operate various online media services and Internet radio using the MMI.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 163, fig. 140* is displayed.

Applies to: using online media and Internet radio

Requirement:

– The **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.
– You must be logged into your myAudi account in the **Audi MMI connect** app and you must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function on the mobile device and on the MMI must be switched on.
– If necessary, check in the connection manager ⇨ *page 175* if the mobile device you connected is selected under the **MMI connect app** (☑).
– The MMI must be connected to the network.
– The symbol for the **Online media*** source ⑧ ⇨ *page 163, fig. 140* is shown in the MMI.

Applies to: using online media

Additional requirement:

– A supported online media service must be available in your country.
– You must have an account with a supported online media service.
– Depending on the online media service, you must install and open an app on your mobile device.

Starting Online media

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 163* is displayed.
– Select and confirm an online media service.

Starting Internet radio

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 163* is displayed.
– Select and confirm **Internet radio**. The Internet radio browser or the last station that was playing is shown.
– **Selecting the station**: if necessary, select and confirm a category in the Internet radio **Browser** > *a station*.

Online media and Internet radio: additional options

– Press the right control button.

The following options may be available, depending on the information shown (such as the station/track that is currently playing):

– **Sound settings**: ⇨ *page 178*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: see ⇨ *page 130, Wi-Fi hotspot*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 175*.
– Additional options may be available, depending on the active online media service or Internet radio.

WARNING

– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 197*.

Note

Please note that there generally are additional costs when using an online media service account, especially when it is used internationally. ▶

Tips

- Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, a connection loss can occur during playback of online media services.
- **Online media** and **Internet radio** usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
- Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.
- Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 132, About Audi connect*.
- Depending on the mobile device used, there may be interruptions during media playback and when using the **Audi MMI connect** app. To avoid interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the **Audi MMI connect** app in the foreground.
- Contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information about online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter for Audi music interface or USB charging port

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can connect your mobile devices (such as a smartphone or MP3 player) to the Audi music interface or a USB charging port using a special USB adapter.

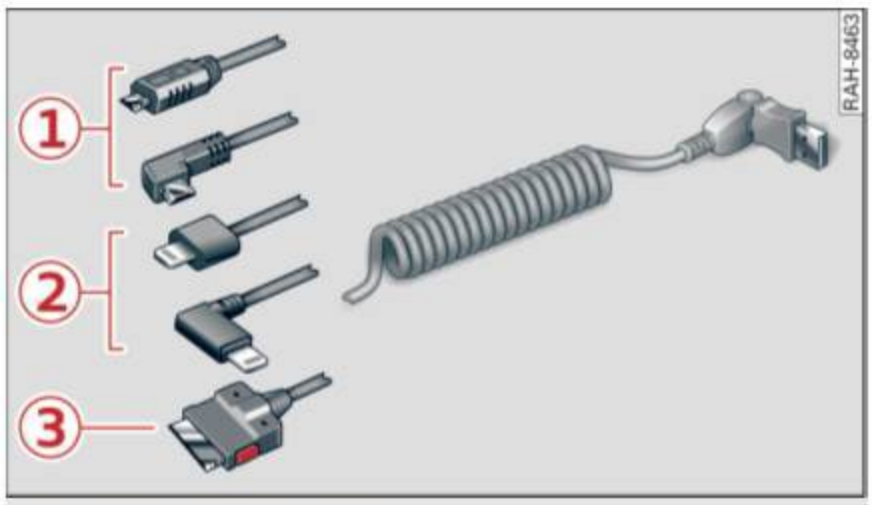


Fig. 137 Audi USB adapters

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with an Apple Dock connector

You can purchase the USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Audi music interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the battery.

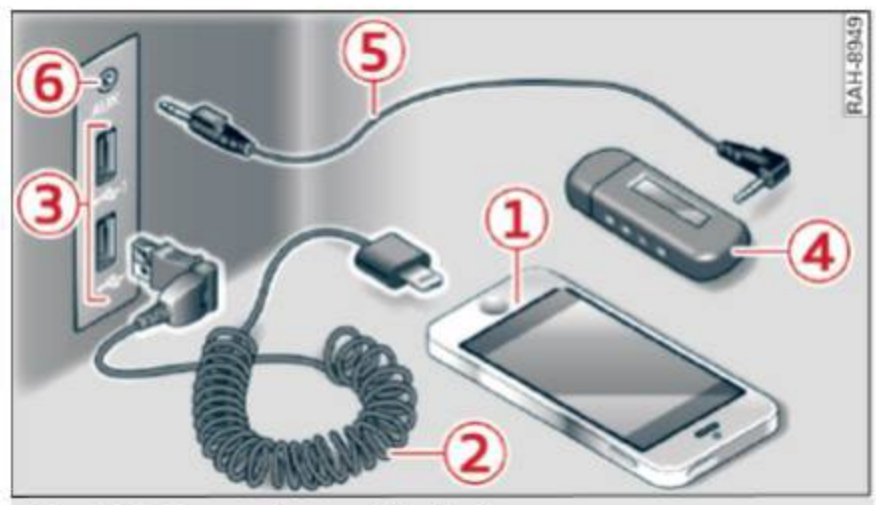


Fig. 138 Connecting mobile devices

The Audi music interface is located in the center console storage compartment (23) ⇨ *page 6, fig. 2*.

- **Connecting a mobile device using a USB adapter**: connect the applicable USB adapter (2) ⇨ *fig. 138* to the port on the Audi music interface (3) and then connect the adapter to the mobile device (1) (such as an iPod).
- **Charging a mobile device using a USB adapter**: when you connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface (3) using the applicable USB adapter (2) ⇨ *fig. 138*, the battery will automatically charge.
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: remove the USB adapter (2) ⇨ *fig. 138* from the Audi music interface (3) ⇨ *fig. 138*.
- **Disconnecting mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector**: remove the Apple Dock ▶

connector from the Apple device with the release tabs pressed in (3) ⇨ *page 161, fig. 137*.

The media are started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 163*.

Connecting two mobile devices: if two mobile devices (for example iPod and smartphone) are connected at the same time, then both devices can be used as playback sources.

You can connect mobile devices using the analog **AUX** port.

- **Connecting a mobile device to the AUX input**: connect the cable (5) ⇨ *fig. 138* to the AUX input (6) on the Audi music interface and then to the mobile device (4) (such as an MP3 player or smartphone).
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the AUX input**: remove the cable (5) ⇨ *fig. 138* from the Audi music interface.
- **Operation**: select and confirm the **External audio player** source (5) ⇨ *page 163, fig. 139*. The media are started and operated through the mobile device (4) ⇨ *fig. 138*.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

- Remove the connector from the Audi music interface carefully so it is not damaged.
- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to prevent damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
- Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

- Do not use an additional adapter or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter (⇨ *page 161*). They may impair the functionality.
- You can purchase the AUX connector cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.
- Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 standard.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Some versions of the iPod such as the iPod shuffle cannot be connected to the USB adapter for devices with Apple Dock connector. Connect these devices using a AUX connector cable.
- Video playback through the Audi music interface is only supported if the connected device is recognized as a USB storage device (for example a USB stick). Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.
- iPod/iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod/iPhone if this happens.
- For important information on operating your iPod/iPhone, refer to the user guide for the device. Audi recommends updating the iPod/iPhone software to the latest version.
- For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth** or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Playing media

Accessing media

You can start and operate various media through the MMI control panel.



Fig. 139 Diagram: possible sources in the Media menu



Fig. 140 Diagram: possible sources in the Media menu

Requirement: a media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 156*.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the source overview is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired source. **Or**: press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sources may be displayed in the **Media** menu:

Switch to radio: the Radio menu opens ⇨ *page 150*.

- ① **Jukebox*** 157
- ② **DVD/CD drive*** 156, 157
- ③ **SD card reader** 156
- ④ **Audi music interface*** 161
  such as iPod, USB stick
- ⑤ **External audio player** 161
  such as an MP3 player connected to the AUX input
- ⑥ **Bluetooth audio player*** 158
- ⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player*** 159
- ⑧ **Online media*** and **Internet radio*** . . 160

– **Playing audio/video files**: select a source in the **Media** menu > *Category* (such as artists > *album* > *track*).

– **Moving one level up in the folder structure**: press the BACK button. **Or**: select and confirm **Folder up**.

– **Selecting the previous or next track/chapter** [1]: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly to the left ⏮ or right ⏭.

– **Fast-forwarding and rewinding audio/video files**: press and hold the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel to the left ⏮ or right ⏭ for a longer time.

– **Pausing or resuming playback**: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.

– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.

[1] Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

Media center

Various categories for selecting audio/video files are available in the media center.*

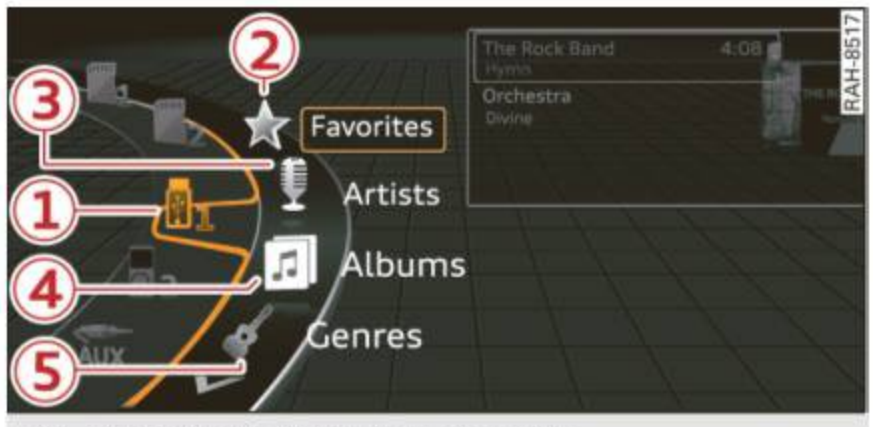


Fig. 141 Example: USB stick categories

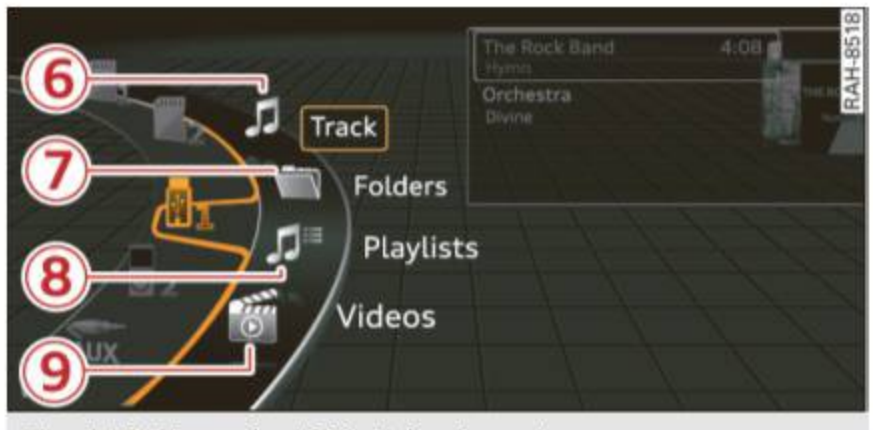


Fig. 142 Example: USB stick categories

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the source overview is displayed. Select and confirm the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The active source symbol ① may change depending on the connected device, the online media service* or Internet radio*. As an example, a USB stick is shown ⇨ *fig. 141* connected to the Audi music interface*.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video files* from the following categories and add them to the playlist:

② Favorites

The **Favorites** category appears if at least one entry is stored in the favorites list. See ⇨ *page 165, Favorites*.

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (such as **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a song.

⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder, if necessary. Select and confirm a track.

⑧ Playlists

All available playlists from the source and the smart playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Smart playlists:

- **Last played tracks**: the last tracks played in the selected source are displayed.
- **Most played**: the most played songs in the selected source are displayed.
- **5 stars** to **1 star**: tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
- **Not rated**: all files from the selected source without rating information (for example, in the ID3 tag) are displayed.

⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Tips

- Only the categories supported by the medium are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks cannot be selected with categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. With an iPod (source: Audi music interface ⇨ *page 161*), the **Podcasts**, **Audio books** and **Composers** categories are also available. ▶

– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud" services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

Free text search

You can search in the active source by tracks and video files, for example*



Fig. 143 Input field and results list for free text search

You can open the **free text search** ⇨ *fig. 143* depending on the selected source.

Requirement: the playlist ⇨ *page 165* or media center ⇨ *page 164* must be displayed.

Opening free text search

▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① ⇨ *fig. 143* appears. **Or**: push the control knob up.

Using the free text search: see ⇨ *page 104, Free text search*.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 143*. You can search for artists ② ⇨ *fig. 143*, albums ③ or tracks ④ as well as genres and videos.

Tips

– It will then search through the files in the active source.
– If the free text search was opened in the **Folders** ⑦ category ⇨ *page 164, fig. 142* or in the **Composers**, **Podcasts** and **Audio books** category, then it will only search through files in that folder.

Playlist



Fig. 144 Example: playlist

The track, artist, album and album cover, if applicable, will appear in the playlist.

Options

See ⇨ *page 166, Additional settings*.

Favorites

You can store up to 50 entries for each source in the favorites list.

Requirement: the playlist or media center must be open.

– Select the desired entry from the playlist or media center.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**. **Or**: press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

When you store a track as a favorite, the associated album will appear in the favorites list as an entry.

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the favorites list.

Displaying the favorites list: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 163* is displayed. Select the source that contains the *categories* ⇨ *page 164* (for example, SD card). Select the **Favorites***category*.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

– **Listening to a favorite**: select and confirm an entry from the favorites list. ▶

– **Move favorite**: select the desired entry from the favorites list. Select the right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the desired presets location.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select the desired entry from the favorites list. Select the right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Additional settings

Options menu

Context-specific functions and settings are available depending on the selected source.

▸ Press the right control button.

Sound settings

See ⇨ *page 178*.

Input level

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the AUX connection cable or to a USB adapter ⇨ *page 161, Multimedia connections*.

The volume of the mobile device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume on the mobile device to 70% of the maximum volume output.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 176*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 130, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 175*.

Additional track information

With the function switched on ☑ and a playlist open, various information about the current track (such as artist, album and album cover*) as well as the playing time and the remaining playing time are displayed.

Jukebox memory capacity*

Information on the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks in the Jukebox is displayed.

Change playing position

Turn the control knob to the left or right. **Or**: move your finger on the MMI touch control pad from the left to the right.

Shuffle[1)]

With the function switched on ☑, all files in the playlist are played and shown in random order.

Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track repeats.

Back to 'Playback'

The options menu is closed. The track currently playing appears in the playlist ⇨ *page 165, fig. 144*.

Play similar music*

The track currently playing is quickly analyzed (such as artists, genres, mood, beat) and a smart playlist with similar tracks is shown.

Play more...

A smart playlist is shown based on the track currently playing. You can select between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **from this album** or **of this genre**.

Set as ringtone*[2)]

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI. The track currently playing must be in the **Jukebox*** ⇨ *page 157*.

The selected track will be used as the ringtone for incoming calls.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. ▶

1) The function automatically switches off when the source is changed.
2) This function is not available for all cell phones.

Depending on availability, various information will load about the track currently playing when this function is switched on ☑.

Copy to jukebox

See ⇨ *page 157, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

Favorites

See ⇨ *page 165*.

Additional options

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a video file* or a DVD* must be playing.

Parental control*

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted using parental control.

Enter the password for parental control. Password set at the factory: **1234**. You have the following options:

– **Protection level**: select and confirm the protection level (for example, Level 5). Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at Level 5, all DVDs from level 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play. Select **No restriction** to remove all of the restrictions.
– **Change password**: edit the current password.

Switch to full screen

The video image is displayed. Turn the control knob to display the playlist. **Or**: press the BACK button.

Replay video

When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will replay.

Show DVD menu

Selecting a menu item: select and confirm a menu item. **Or**: move your finger on the MMI touch control pad* and press the control knob.

Audio track[1)]

You can manually set the audio track (language and audio format). The language and audio format options depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles[1)]

You can set subtitles for playback manually. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Picture format

Audi recommends the **Automatic** setting for the picture format. You can set the picture format depending on the active file or source (for example Video file*, DVD*).

Picture format	Information
Automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimum ratio. Black bars may appear on the sides of the display, depending on the source format and the Infotainment system display that is installed.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire Infotainment system display. Switch the function off if the image is distorted.
Cinemascope	Use this setting for films in cinema format 21:9. Black bars will appear on the upper/lower edge in the Infotainment system display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off when **Auto** is selected.

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

8S0012721BB

Picture format	Information
4:3	The image is fixed in the 4:3 picture format. Black bars are shown on the sides of the Infotainment system display.
16:9	The image is fixed in the 16:9 picture format. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.

Tips

– Not all video DVDs have parental control.

– The security levels for the **Parental control** are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ.
– Password entry for **Parental control** will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row. The password can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The following audio/video files are supported by the DVD drive, the **Jukebox***, the SD card reader and the connection for USB storage devices:*

	Audio files				Video files*		
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity up to 128 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min.) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player **Audi music interface**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 161* such as iPods and MTP players, USB storage devices in "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" that conform to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives						
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage devices**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device partitions**: 2 per USB connection **CD/DVD file systems:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF						
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote is displayed, depending on availability.						
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC	MPEG-1/-2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX						

	Audio files		Video files*
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies	48 kHz sampling frequency	up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at maximum 25fps
Number of files	**DVD drive***: max. 1,000 files per medium **Jukebox***: approximately 10 GB memory capacity; max. 3,000 files can be imported **USB storage devices and memory cards**: max. 10000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory		

Tips

- The media drives do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
- To compress MP3 files, a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s is recommended. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for MP3 files with variable bit rate.
- Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.
- The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its "USB Device Subclass".
- Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

The following audio file properties are supported by the CD drive:

	Audio files			
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB			
File system	**CD file system**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF			
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium may be displayed, depending on availability.			
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer-3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX			
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency
Number of files	Maximum 1,000 files per medium			

Tips

- To compress MP3 files, a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s is recommended. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for MP3 files with variable bit rate.
- Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending ▶

on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface*/Bluetooth audio player*: mobile device is not supported.	Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 161, Multimedia connections/* ⇨ *page 158, Bluetooth audio player*. You can learn about supported mobile devices in the Audi database for mobile devices at **www.audiusa.com/bluetooth**.
Audi music interface*/AUX input: the volume is too high/too low when starting playback through the AUX input.	Adjust the volume of the mobile device to approximately 70% of the maximum output ⇨ *page 166,* **Input level**.
Audi music interface*: the portable device is not recognized as a source.	For many cell phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% of its capacity). The mobile device will only be recognized as a media source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge level is sufficient.
Audi music interface*: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 176* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.
AUX input: there is static when connecting and disconnecting the AUX connection cable.	When connecting and disconnecting, the **External audio player** source is already selected. Before connecting or disconnecting the mobile device, either mute the device (see ⇨ *page 178*) or switch to a different audio source (for example ⇨ *page 150, Opening the radio*).
Bluetooth audio player*/Wi-Fi audio player*: audio playback interference.	Only *one* interface should be actively used at a time to ensure problem-free playback.
Wi-Fi audio player*: audio playback interference.	Audio playback interference can occur on some cell phones if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established through the SIM card reader* on the MMI control panel and the **mobile data** option on the cell phone is switched on. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your cell phone.
Jukebox*: tracks on the imported playlist are grayed out.	When importing playlists, all of the files themselves must be imported.
Jukebox*: imported tracks cannot be played or found.	If you cannot find imported tracks in the media center, they may not be supported. Only copy supported files ⇨ *page 168* to the Jukebox.
Wi-Fi audio player*: multiple devices are connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (such as a smartphone) appears as the media source and cannot be changed.	Close the **Audi MMI connect** app on the connected devices (for example, smartphones) that are not being used as the Wi-Fi audio player*. Likewise, close the UPnP server apps or the media permissions on the integrated UPnP/DLNA server. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player* ⇨ *page 159*.

Problem	Solution
Online media*: connection failed between the MMI and the **Audi MMI connect** app.	To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the **Audi MMI connect** app status screen.
Bluetooth audio player*: interference with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).

Audi smartphone interface

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted to the Infotainment system display while driving and can be operated through the MMI control panel.

Requirement:

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

iPhone generation 5 or higher with Lightning connector and iOS 7.1.2 operating system or higher. **Or**:

Smartphone with Android Auto app and Android 5.0 Lollipop operating system or higher.

- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 161* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 161, fig. 137*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Activate Apple CarPlay** or **Activate Android Auto now**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone if applicable.

If you chose not to use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto when connecting your smartphone for the first time, you can start the Audi smartphone interface later on using the **Connection manager**.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi smartphone interface** > **Change to connection manager**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 161* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 161, fig. 137*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Audi smartphone:** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 175*. You can select your smartphone in the list of devices that are already paired ⇨ *page 176*.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

Tips

- The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  - the brand of your smartphone
  - the version of the operating system in your smartphone
  - the software version of the app used
  - the USB adapter cable and correct connection
  - your cell phone service provider
  - the customized settings on your smartphone
- One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
- If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 113*.
- The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- The time displayed in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- Several MMI functions are not available when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is active.
- You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active.
- When the Apple CarPlay connection is active, **Tag this song for iTunes***[1)] is not available ⇨ *page 151*.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Opening a menu

Apple CarPlay: you can go back to the Apple CarPlay main menu regardless of the selected menu item by pressing and holding the BACK button. ▸

1) In preparation at the time of printing.

Android Auto: to go back to the Android Auto menu bar, push the control knob down.

Opening a menu item

Select and confirm a menu item using the MMI control panel.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Problem	Solution
Audi smartphone interface cannot be opened.	Check the charge level of your smartphone battery. Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary. Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country. Check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI failed.	Check if you are using the correct USB adapter and if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 161*. Check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone. Check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles.
The smartphone is not automatically detected.	Check if you are using the correct USB adapter and if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 161*. Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met.

System settings

Setting the date and time

You can set the clock time manually or using the GPS.

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**.
- **Or**: select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Date & time**.

Automatic setting

When this function is switched on ☑, the time and date are automatically set.

Time

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Time** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Date

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Date** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Time zone

When selecting the appropriate time zone, a sampling of countries in this zone will be listed.

Automatic time zone*

When this function is switched on ☑, the time will automatically adjust to the corresponding time zone.

Time format

If you select **24h**, the clock will display, for example, **13:00**. If you select **AM/PM**, the clock will display, for example, **1:00 PM**.

Date format

If you select **DD.MM.YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **31.08.2017**. If you select **MM/DD/YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **08/31/2017**. If you select **YYYY-MM-DD**, the date display will show, for example, **2017-08-31**.

MMI settings

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

You can change the display language as well as the language for the voice guidance* and voice recognition system*.

The number of languages available depends on the market.

Measurement units

The following units can be selected:

– **Speed** (mph or km/h)
– **Distance** (miles or kilometers)
– **Temperature** (°F or °C)
– **Fuel consumption** (l/100km, mpg (US), mpg (UK) or km/l)
– **Volume** (liters, gallons)

Tool tips

When this function is switched on ☑, your MMI shows you tips for input. The frequency of how often it displays decreases with time. You can switch off the operating tips at any time.

Speech dialog system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Command display: when this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will show you the possible commands for voice input in the respective menu. You can switch the function off at any time.

Short dialog: when this function is switched on ☑, a shorter form of the prompts is used. You can switch the function off at any time.

Speech dialog system volume: you can adjust the volume of the prompts by turning the control knob. ▶

Individual speech training (only when the vehicle is stationary): you can adapt the voice recognition system to your voice or pronunciation in order to improve the system's ability to recognize your speech. Individual training is comprised of 20 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers. You can delete the programmed voice training with the **Reset individual speech training** function.

Factory settings

The following functions can be reset to the factory default settings:

- **Sound settings**
- **Radio**
- **Media settings**
- **Jukebox***
- **Directory***
- **Telephone***
- **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi***
- **Navigation settings***
- **Navigation and online memory***
- **Voice recognition system***
- **Message settings***
- **Apps***
- **Tool tips**
- **Audi connect***

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the **Select all entries** option. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Tips

- Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if applicable.
- If you reset the **Navigation and online memory*** or **Audi connect*** to the factory default settings, the system automatically restarts after approximately 20 seconds. The Infotainment system display will be black for several minutes when restarting.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager gives you an overview of your connected devices and their network status.

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
- Select and confirm a menu item.

If a mobile device was already connected and you select and confirm the corresponding menu item, the device name and connection mode are displayed under the menu item.

You can individually **connect** (☑) or **disconnect** (☐) a paired device.

Using the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Second telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired. **Or**: insert a mini SIM card into the SIM card reader*⇨ *page 126*.

MMI connect app

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Requirement: the **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
– **List of devices already paired**: select your mobile device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Music

Applies to vehicles with Bluetooth or Wi-Fi audio player

Audio player

Requirement: the Bluetooth function and visibility must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 176* and on the cell phone.

– **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Select **Bluetooth audio player**. Search for and connect a mobile device.
– **List of devices already paired**: select a Bluetooth device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Wi-Fi audio player

Requirement: the Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI ⇨ *page 130* and the Wi-Fi on your cell phone must be switched on.

– **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi capable device.
– **DisconnectWi-Fi audio player**: deactivate the Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi capable device. The device will be automatically removed from the list.

Directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Display contacts from a cell phone (or an additional cell phone).

Requirement: cell phones must not be connected to the MMI through the Bluetooth remote SIM access profile or through the **Handsfree** profile.

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a new cell phone.
– **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the cell phones that are already paired.

Audi smartphone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

– Connect your cell phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 161* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 161, fig. 137*.
– Select your cell phone from the list of cell phones that have already been connected.

Additional options

Depending on the selected function, you can use the right control button to access the available additional options in the connection manager.

Bluetooth settings

– **Bluetooth**: select and confirm a setting for the Bluetooth connection visibility. Select **Visible** for the MMI to be visible to other devices. Select **Invisible** for the MMI to not be visible to other devices. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with paired devices when the visibility is switched off. Select **Off** to turn visibility off. Then a Bluetooth connection is not possible.
– **Bluetooth audio player**: when this function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth audio player is available as a source in the **Media** menu.
– **Delete Bluetooth device**: the selected cell phone/mobile device is disconnected from the MMI.
– **Show Bluetooth profile**: you can **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree** profile and the **Directory/contacts*** separately.
– **Bluetooth audio player**: switch this function on ☑ to be able to select the Bluetooth audio player as a source in the Media menu.
– **Bluetooth name**: the MMI Bluetooth name (for example „AUDI MMI 2017“) is displayed and can be changed.

When the function is switched on ☑, the symbol (12) ⇨ *page 105, fig. 107* appears in the Infotainment system display. ▶

Online settings*

– **Data connection settings**: see ⇨ *page 131, Configuring the data connection*
– **Data usage counter**: the amount of data packets that are sent and received through the MMI is displayed. You can reset the data usage information to zero using the **Reset data counter** option.
– **Network status**: the mobile network provider for data service as well as the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 130, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

SIM PIN settings*

– **Automatic PIN entry**: when this function is switched on ☑, the SIM PIN is automatically saved in the MMI after it is entered for the first time. The SIM PIN for four different SIM cards can be saved in the MMI. With the function switched off, the currently stored SIM PIN is deleted from the MMI. When the automatic PIN entry is switched on, there are no SIM PIN prompts.
– **Disable PIN query**: when switched on, there are no SIM PIN queries. The automatic PIN entry is not used in this case.
– **Change PIN**: you can change the PIN on your SIM card. First enter the current SIM PIN. The SIM PIN may only contain digits 0-9. The new SIM PIN must be entered twice for security and then it will be saved to the SIM card.

Apple CarPlay sound settings/Android Auto sound settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

See ⇨ *page 178*.

About Apple CarPlay/About Android Auto

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Here you will find legal information regarding the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto and information about device-specific data exchange.

Delete CarPlay device/Delete Android Auto device

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: your cell phone must not be connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter.

To remove your cell phone from the list of all cell phones that are already paired, select and confirm **Delete CarPlay device** or **Delete Android Auto device**.

Tips

Some SIM cards do not allow the SIM PIN queries to be switched off.

System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

– **System update**: slide the storage device with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 156*. Select and confirm the drive > **Start update**. The length of the process depends on the size of the update.
– **Reset driver installation**: the selected media driver package is reset to the settings at the time of delivery.
– **Version information**: information on the MMI software version and the navigation database* software version is displayed. The **Software information** function also provides information on the software contained in the MMI and the licensing agreement.

Sound settings

The sound distribution and volume of the MMI can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on vehicle equipment.

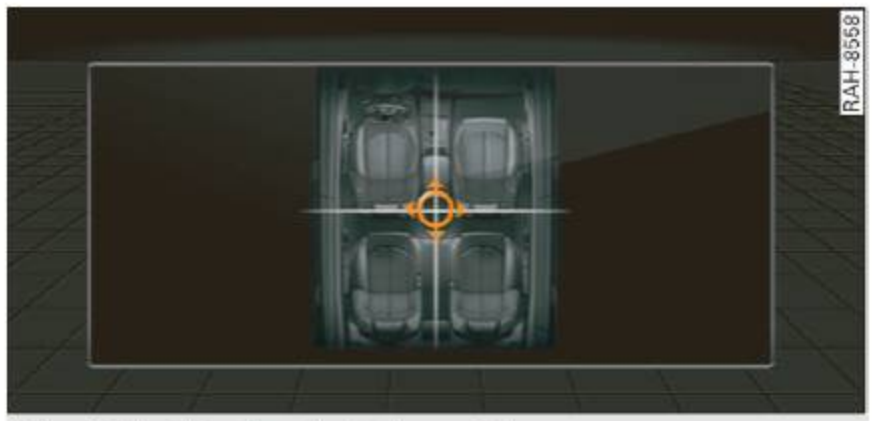


Fig. 145 Adjusting the balance/fader

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

Treble / Bass

You can adjust the **Treble** and **Bass** settings by turning the control knob. The changed settings only apply for the audio source that is active at the time. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

Balance/fader (Sound focus)

– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the left or right**: press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the front or rear**: press the control knob again. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution using the MMI touch***: move your finger on the MMI touch control panel in the desired direction.

Speed-dependent volume

You can adjust how much the volume changes to compensate for noise inside the vehicle by turning the control knob.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

The volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) can be adjusted directly while the sound is playing using the On/Off knob.*

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the On/Off knob (1) ⇨ *page 96, fig. 94* to the right or left.
– **Muting or pausing**: press the On/Off knob briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the left until the mute symbol appears. An active audio/video source is stopped.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: press the On/Off knob briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the right.

Tips

Volumes that are too high or too low are automatically adjusted to a set level when the MMI is switched on.

Adjusting the system volume

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Mute telephone: messages and ringtones are set to mute.

Ringtone: ⇨ *page 124,* **Ringtone and volume settings**.

Ringtone volume: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone by turning the control knob.

Message volume: you can adjust the volume of the notification for an incoming text message by turning the control knob.

Microphone input level: you can adjust the volume during a phone call by turning the control knob.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Voice guidance: see ⇨ *page 142, Voice guidance.* ▶

Voice guidance during phone call: see ⇨ *page 142, Voice guidance*.

Voice guidance volume: you can adjust the voice guidance volume during active route guidance by turning the control knob.

Entertainment fader: the volume of audio playback can be temporarily lowered when the parking system or voice guidance is active.

Voice recognition system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Short dialog: prompts in a shorter format can be switched on or off.

Speech dialog system volume: you can adjust the volume of the prompts by turning the control knob.

Parking aid*

You can adjust the signal tone volume by turning the control knob.

– **Adjusting** the **Front volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

MMI touch volume*

You can adjust the volume of the prompts for the MMI touch* by turning the control knob.

Audi Heartbeat

You can adjust the volume of Audi Heartbeat by turning the control knob.

Restarting the MMI (Reset)

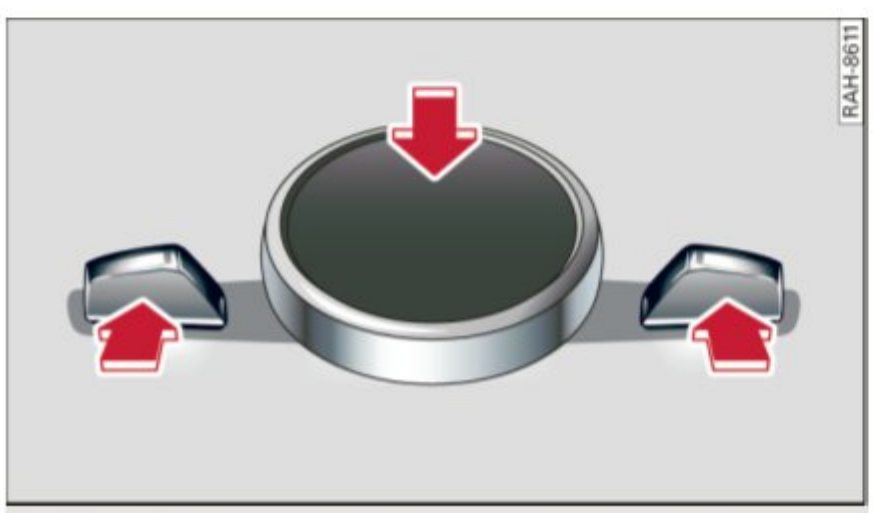


Fig. 146 Button combination to restart the system

▸ Briefly press the control knob and both rocker switches *at the same time* ⇨ *fig. 146*.

Software license information

Information on the software contained in the MMI and the license agreement.

– Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**.

– **Or**: online at **www.audi.com/softwareinfo**.

Information on the software contained in the instrument cluster and the license agreement.

Press the reset button 0.0 ⇨ *page 23, fig. 12* twice within five seconds of switching the ignition on.

Safe driving

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- safety belt pretensioners,
- safety belt force limiters for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- knee airbags for the front seats*
- side airbags in the front seats,
- side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 185*, ⇨ *page 47*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.

- Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 189*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

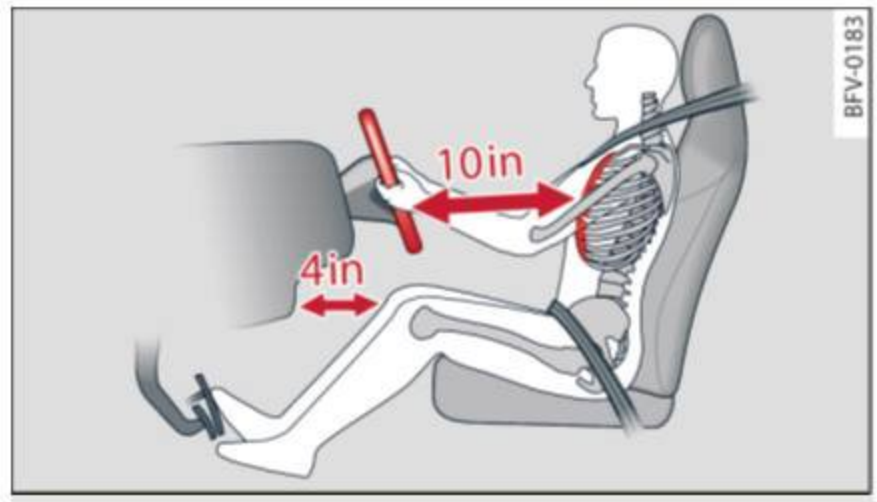


Fig. 147 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 147*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 193*.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*. ▶

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 in (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates
– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 221*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 197*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 193*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 44*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 in (25 cm) between the front passenger‘s breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 in (10 cm) between the front passenger‘s knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.

▶

– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 221*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 197*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- Make sure that the seatback is securely latched in the upright position ⇨ *page 49*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 193*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 221*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the rear seat
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel ▶

– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area

WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver and passenger side footwell

Important safety instructions

WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

– No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor ▶

mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

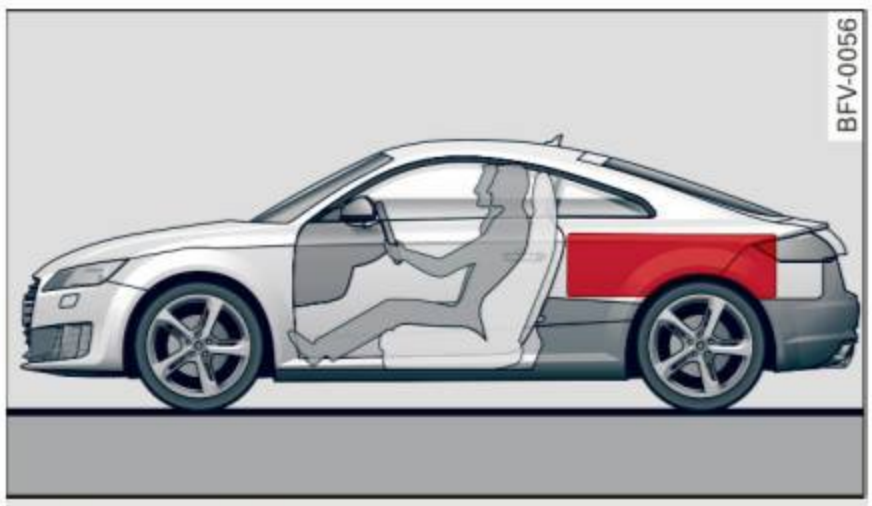


Fig. 148 Safe load positioning: heavy cargo positioned as far forward as possible.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible ⇨ *fig. 148* .
- ▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 186*.
- ▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
– Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

– Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  – Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  – Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.

▶

– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 180*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel, on the left side of the luggage compartment. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 266*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.



Fig. 149 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 185, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10 lbs (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this. ▶

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

- Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
- When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
- Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at:

Tel.: 1 (888) 327-4236 (TTY: 1 (800) 424-9153) or 1 (800) 424-9393

or you may write to:

Administrator
NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Volkswagen Group Canada, Inc.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to ▶

8S0012721BB

Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1 (800) 333-0510 or
Tel.: 1 (819) 994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1 (888) 675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.
– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.
– Persons taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the rear lid is closed or in a crash.
– The minimum clearance between the passenger's heads and the rear window must never - under any circumstances - be less that 1in (2.5 cm) when the passengers sit fully upright.
– Always make sure that rear seat passengers cannot be struck when the rear lid is closed.

Number of seats

Your Audi TT Coupe has two seating positions in the front and two height-limited seating positions in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt. The rear seat area in your Audi TT Coupe does not have enough room for passengers of all sizes. For reasons of safety, no person taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) should ever ride in the rear seat area.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling up.



Fig. 150 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you wear it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age. ▶

8S0012721BB

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, a warning tone will sound for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

- Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
- Failure to pay attention to the warning light that comes on could lead to personal injury.

Why safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

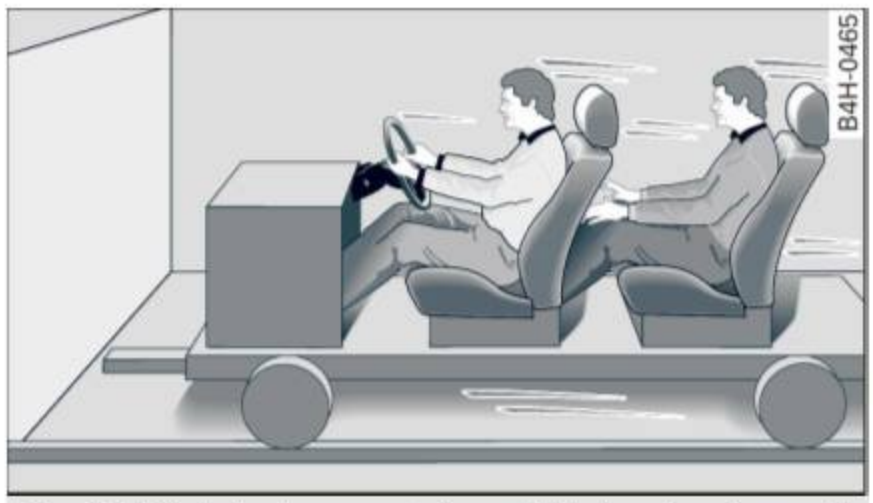


Fig. 151 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 152 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 151*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 152*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At higher speeds, these forces are even greater.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 153 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 154 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 153*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 154*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 155 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver.

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury. ▶

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- ▸ Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ▸ Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- – Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- – For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- – Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- – Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- – Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- – Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- – Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- – Never wear belts twisted.
- – Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- – Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- – Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- – Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- – Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- – Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- – Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- – Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- – Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself. ▶

– Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 277*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Seat first - everybody buckle up!

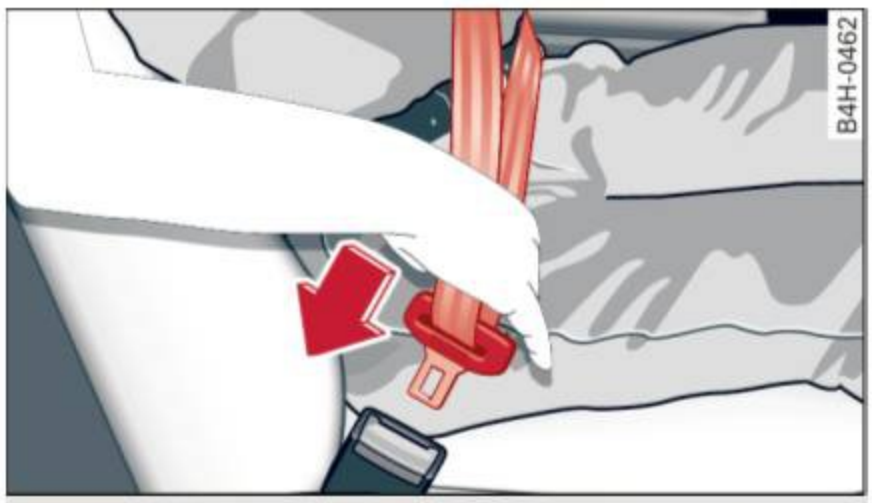


Fig. 156 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat properly ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 156*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts on the front seats are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 15*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 232*.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 194, Safety belt position*.

- – Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- – Always make sure that the rear seat backrest is securely latched whenever the rear safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- – Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- – A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
- – Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 234*.

Tips

For information on safety belt pretensioners, refer to ⇨ *page 195*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

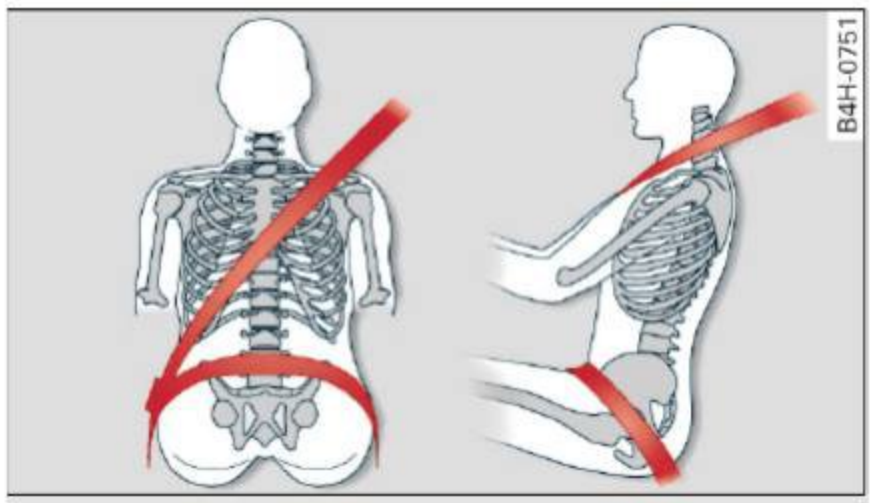


Fig. 157 Safety belt position

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 157*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 192*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 158 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 194*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat properly ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 158*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *page 193, fig. 156*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 193*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

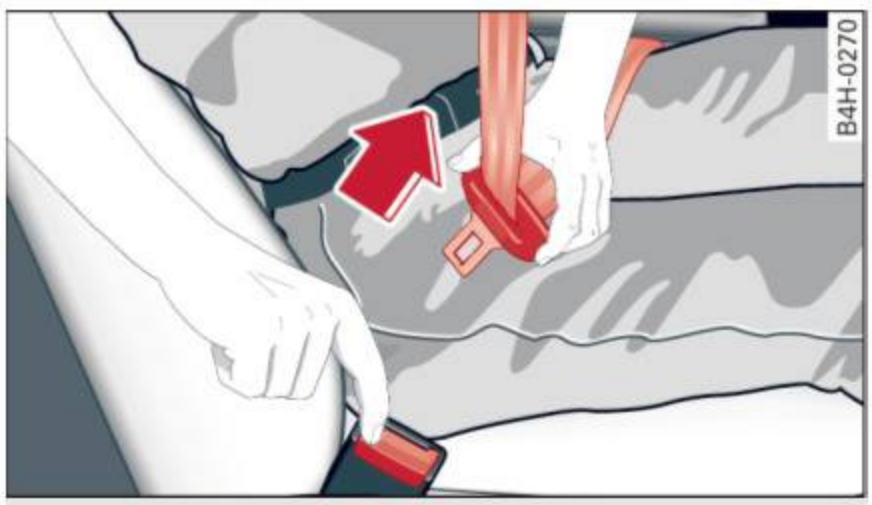


Fig. 159 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 159*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect seated position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- – Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seated position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- – Always read and follow all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 192*.

Safety belt tensioner

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts for the front seating positions are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 196*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- – It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
- – The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.

Tips

The pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners can only deploy once.

- – The safety belt pretensioners do not deploy in minor frontal, side and rear-end collisions.
- – A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.

– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
– Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:
– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 181*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 182*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 192*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 221*.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 181, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 44*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 221*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1(800) 822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of ▶

impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 189*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 in (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 in (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to held you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 193, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 181*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 221*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child ▶

seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the Requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if a child up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 223*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the headliner tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will come on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will come on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 223*.
– **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will come on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 209, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 223*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the headliner and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 209, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light*.

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The ▶

8S0012721BB

airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 209, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System. ▶

- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 160 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel

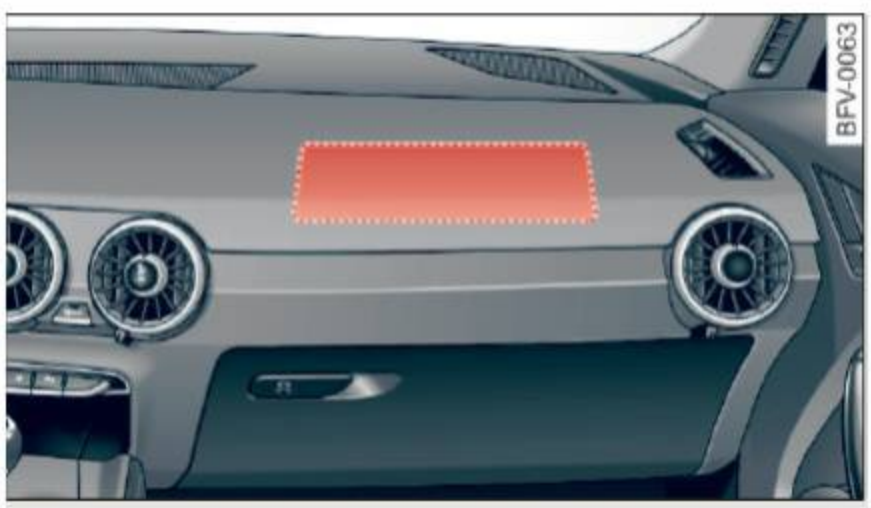


Fig. 161 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the front seats have “pretensioners” that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 160* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 161*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

▶

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.
- Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach then to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
- Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the “low risk” option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the ▶

passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 223, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

"Suppression" requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 223*,
– When a person is detected on the front passenger seat that has an electrical capacitance that is more than the total electrical capacitance of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 223*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the headliner will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 209*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 197*. ▶

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- lways make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 209*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The ▶

control unit "decides" whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.

- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
- A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
- An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster.
- A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
- The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the headliner ⇨ *page 209, fig. 163* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
- A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.

- Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
- Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
- Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
- Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
- Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
- Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
- Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
- Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
- Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
- Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection ▶

system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.
– If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster.
– If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light light will go out.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations.

Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 209*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 197*.

More important things to know about front airbags

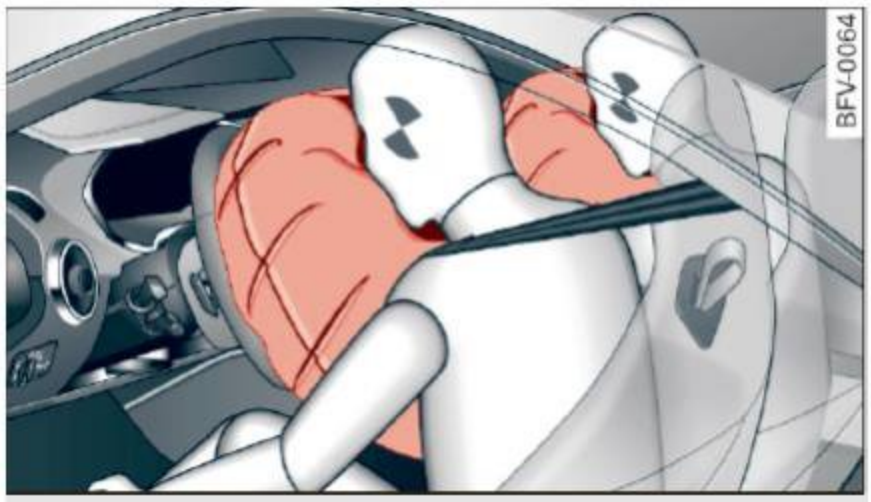


Fig. 162 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 209* and how they work comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 198*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof. ▶

– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
– Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
– Never tilt the front passenger seat backrest forward when the vehicle is moving. An inflating airbag will force the backrest backward and can injure rear seat occupants.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.
– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the **SRS** *light and the* **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light **SRS** will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light SRS:

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light



Fig. 163 Section from the headliner: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light is located in the headliner ⇨ *fig. 163*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light burns out, the airbag indicator light **SRS** will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF / PASSENGER AIR BAG ON light will show the status of the ▶

front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

– will come on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will come on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 223*.
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 198, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
– make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
– make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
– make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
– make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear ▶

seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

– If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.
– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. ▶

Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.

▶

– For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  – Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified technicians who have the experience, information and special tools necessary to perform the work safely.
  – If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.
– Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
– Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 164 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 164*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 207, More important things to know about front airbags*. ▶

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 189, General notes*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag warning light in the instrument cluster

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 207*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.

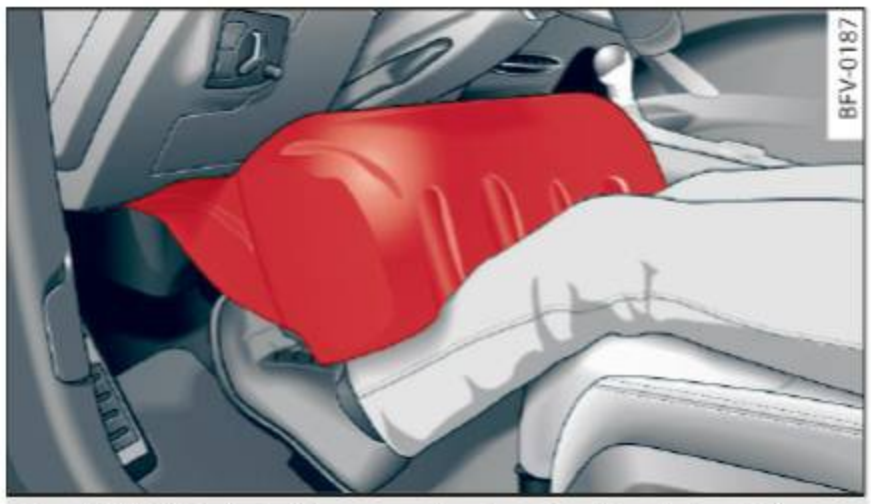


Fig. 165 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 207, fig. 162*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities. ▶

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 in (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 in (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

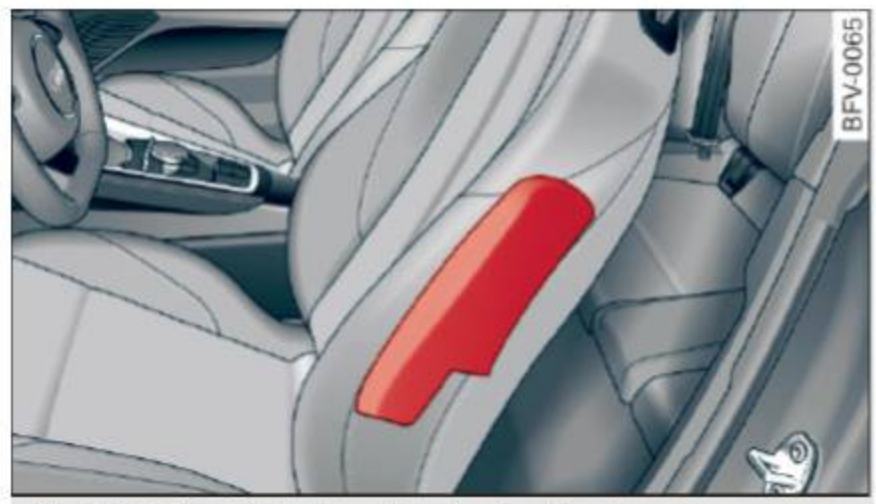


Fig. 166 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 166* facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when ▶

the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 189*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 197*, Child safety ⇨ *page 221*.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 217, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 189, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 217*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 167 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 167*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or ▶

by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.
– Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

– Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
  – Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
  – Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
  – Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
  – Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
  – Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 168 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 168*. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG" on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is ▶

below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 219, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 189, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 44, Seats and storage*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 15* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 169 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 169*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order ▶

8S0012721BB

to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 221*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the side curtain airbag inflates.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

WARNING

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 191, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13 lbs (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 lbs (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings ⇨ *page 198*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information please see information provided by the:

– National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at : http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)
– Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 225, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

– Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
– A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
  - If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a ▶

rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 189, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 197, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 221, Important information*.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S.National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the ▶

8S0012721BB

applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** **ON** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately. ▶

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 227*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 232*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 227*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  – When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  – Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  – Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
– Never allow children under 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) to wear a normal safety belt. However, the rear seat in the TT Coupe is designed to permit children who are between 4 ft 3 in (1.3 m) and 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall to use the available three-point lap and shoulder safety belts.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  – Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  – The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
  – The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System. ▶

8S0012721BB

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  - Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  - Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 189, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 197, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat

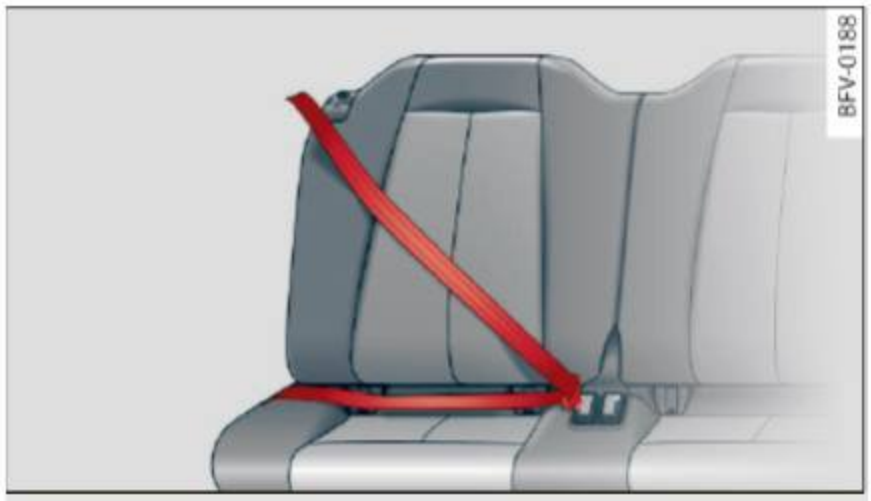


Fig. 170 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. - outer rear safety belt,

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Fasten the unused safety belt behind the child seat and let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by fastening the unused safety belt behind the child seat and letting the belt retractor wind up the webbing.

Child seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.

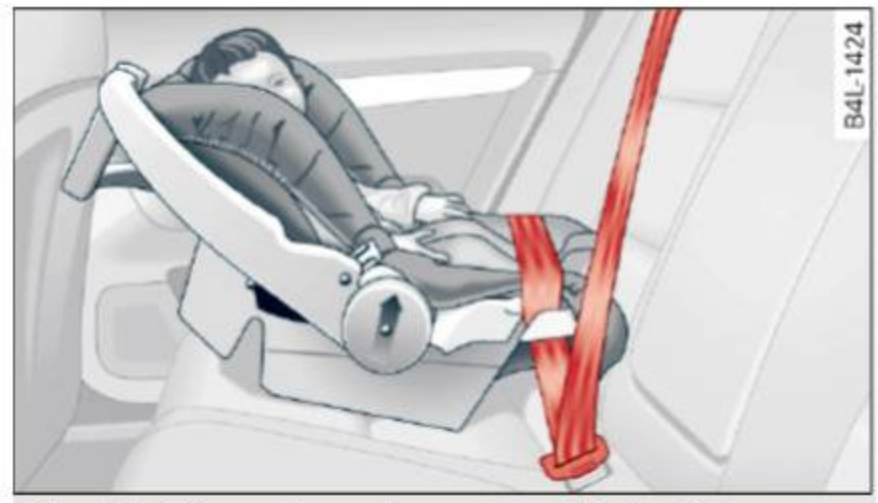


Fig. 171 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 232*.

▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).

▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 227*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 171*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. ▸

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 198, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 189, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 197, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 221, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

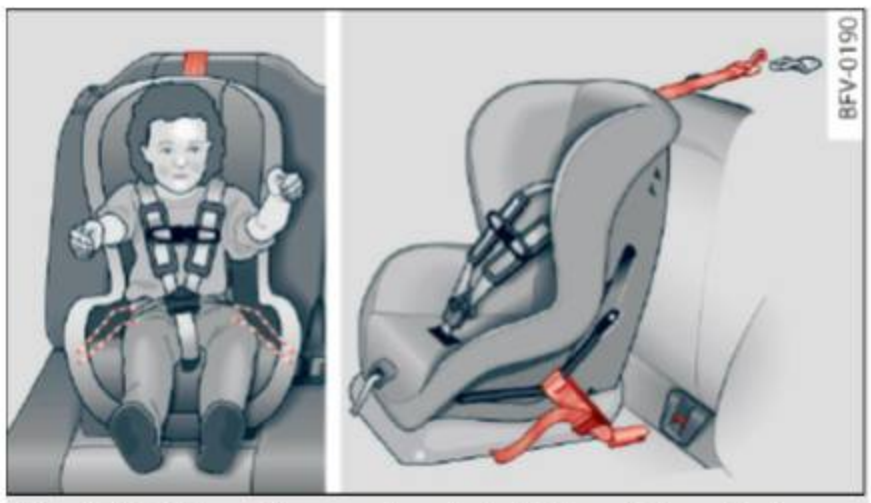


Fig. 172 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

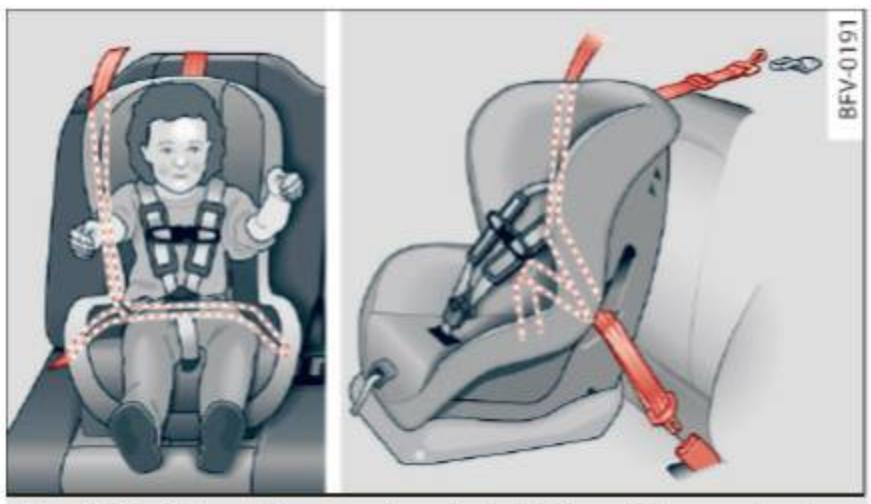


Fig. 173 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 232* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that ▶

the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 232*.

- ▸ If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 238*.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 227*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 172* and ⇨ *fig. 173*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- – Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- – The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- – Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- – If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- – The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- – Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 189, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 197, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 221, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

- – Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- – Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
- – Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
- – Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- – Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
- – Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. ▸

– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs and 80 lbs (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall.



Fig. 174 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall and weigh about 80 lbs (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- ▸ Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- ▸ The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 227*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be ▶

fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 189*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 209, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 189, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 197, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 221, Important information*.

Booster seats on the rear seat

Children who are about 7 years and older, who weigh more than 55 lbs (25 kg) and are not taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) are best protected when properly restrained on the rear seat.

Due to limited rear seat head clearance children 4 ft 3 in (51 in/1.30 m) and taller must not use booster seats on the rear seat of your Audi TT Coupe. The rear seat of your Audi TT Coupe has been specially designed to permit children who are between 4 ft 3 in (51 in/1.30 m) and 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall (about 7 to 12 years old) to ▶

8S0012721BB

use the available three -point lap and shoulder safety belts.

WARNING

- The rear seat area is too small to safely transport passengers taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m).
- Persons taller than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) as well as children in booster seats who are too close to the rear window and roof can suffer severe head and neck injuries when the rear lid is closed or in a crash.
- The minimum clearance between the passengers' heads and the rear window must never - under any circumstances - be less than 1 in (2.5 cm) when the passengers sits fully upright.
- Always make sure that the rear seat passengers cannot be struck when the rear lid is closed.

Booster seats on the front seat

Children aged about 7 years and older and weighing more than 55 lbs (25 kg) who are between 4 ft 3 in (51 in/1.30 m) and 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall may in exceptional circumstances ride on the front passenger's seat. Children less than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall must sit on a certified booster seat and properly wear the vehicle's three-point lap and shoulder safety belt.

Always securely latch the passenger seat at the very rear of its fore and aft adjustment range. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.

WARNING

If you must install a booster seat child restraint on the front passenger seat:

- Make sure the booster seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the booster seat.
- Always move the passenger seat to the very rear of its fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible.
- Always make sure that the passenger seat is securely latched in place before installing the booster seat. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- If the passenger seat cannot be securely latched in the very rear of its fore and aft adjustment range, then the passenger front airbag must be turned off with the ON / OFF switch.

Securing child seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.

▶

– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always make sure that the rear seat backrest is securely latched whenever the rear safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
– If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
– It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 221*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 198, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:
– Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 209, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. ▶

8S0012721BB

– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).

WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.
– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 221*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 198, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- ▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 221*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 198, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren." In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash. ▸

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Tips

- In Canada, the terms “top tether” with “lower universal anchorages” (or “lower universal anchorage bars”) are used to describe the system.
- In other countries, the term “ISOFIX” is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Location

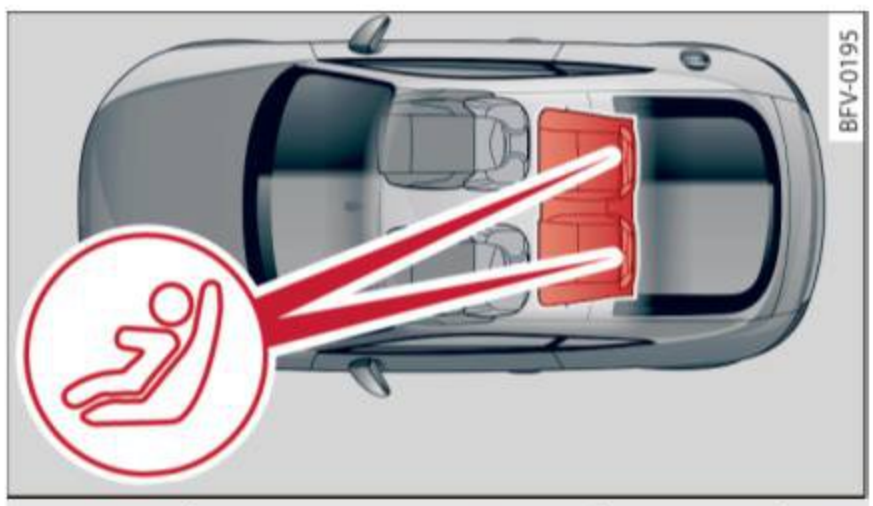


Fig. 175 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower universal anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.



Fig. 176 Lower anchorages, covers marked

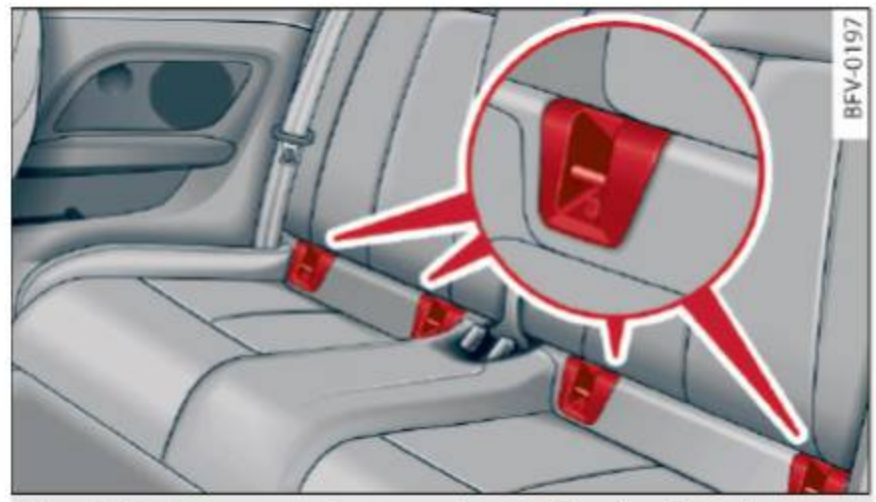


Fig. 177 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The circular markings on the rear seat help you to identify the location of lower anchorages for the two outboard seating positions ⇨ *fig. 176*. The LATCH lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 176* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 177*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system. ▶

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
– Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

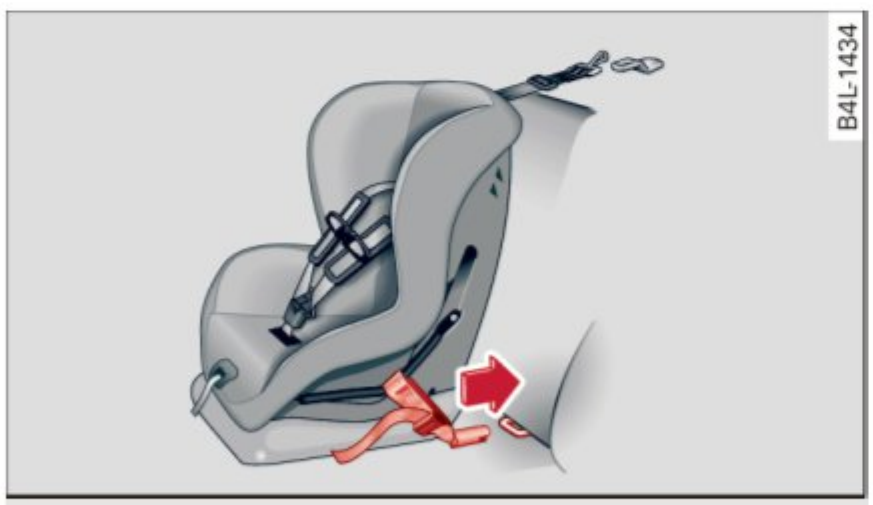


Fig. 178 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- ▸ Remove the covers to access the lower anchorage brackets.
- ▸ Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 178*.
- ▸ Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- ▸ Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 221, Child safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

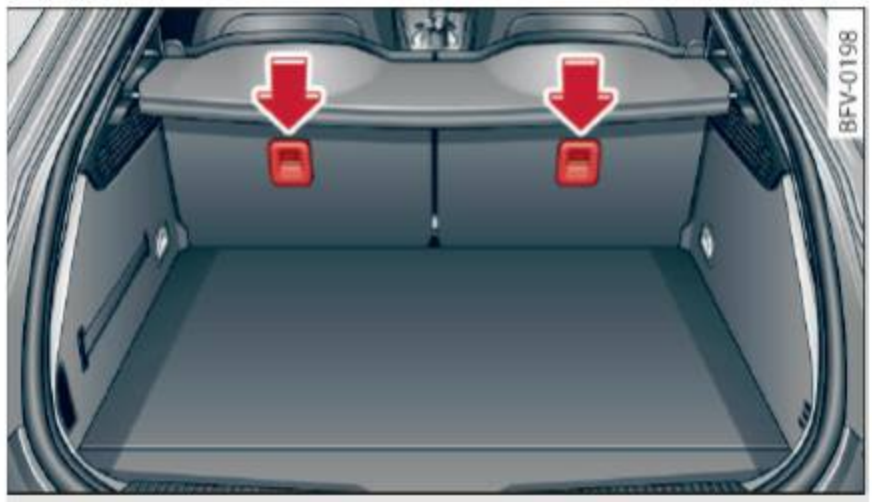


Fig. 179 Tether anchors: attachment hook locations behind the rear seatbacks

The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks .

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage



Fig. 180 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

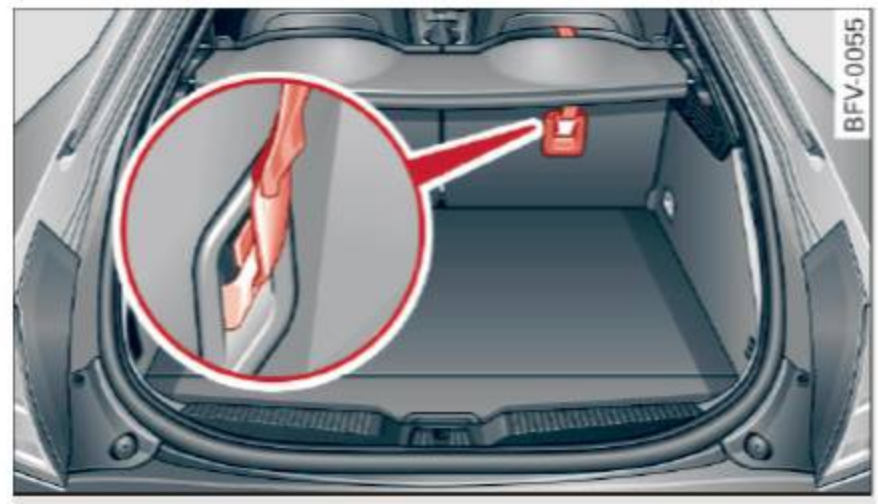


Fig. 181 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. ▶

- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap into the rear cargo area ⇨ *fig. 181*.
- ▸ Slide the tether strap hook over the anchor bracket.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1 (888) 327-4236 (TTY: 1 (800) 424-9153)
www.nhtsa.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: 1 (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: 1 (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: 1 (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1 (800) 333-0371 or call 1 (613) 998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-2834

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Gasoline grade

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found on the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R+M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The following headings match the corresponding sticker in the fuel filler door.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ ⓘ.

The maximum engine power is only reached if premium gasoline 91 AKI / 95 RON is used.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R+M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

- Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
- When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Blended gasoline

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter. ▶

– If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
– Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
– Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
– If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refueling

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 243*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in ⇨ *page 299*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 240*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an onboard refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86).

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

8S0012721BB

Fueling procedure

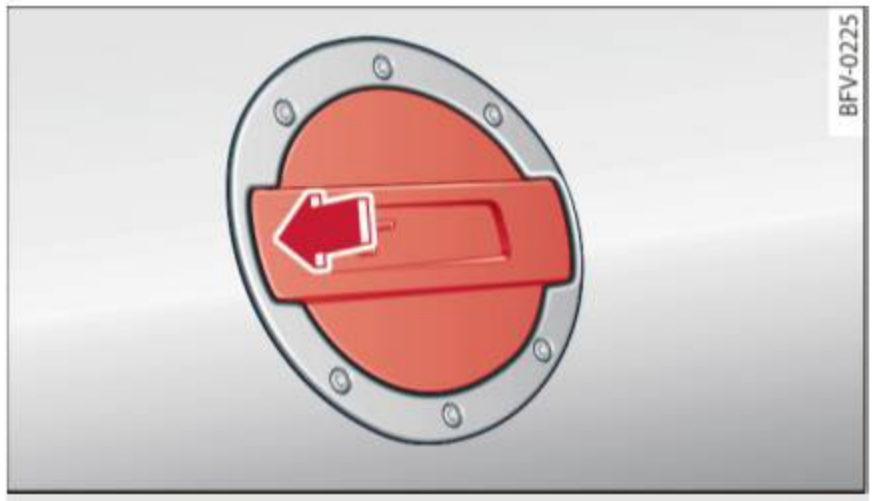


Fig. 182 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

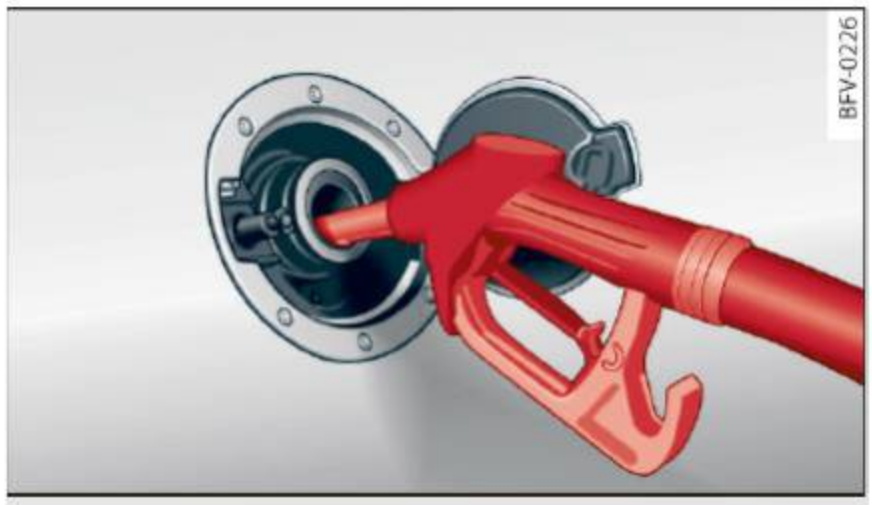


Fig. 183 Engaged fuel pump nozzle

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

- ▸ Press on the fuel filler door to open -arrow-⇨ *fig. 182*. Your vehicle comes with a new tank system without a cap.
- ▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the tank filler neck ⇨ *fig. 183*. Make sure it is correctly locked in place.
- ▸ Begin fueling. Once the pump nozzle switches off, the fuel tank is "full". Do not fill the tank more. Otherwise the expansion space in the tank will be filled.
- ▸ Pull the pump nozzle out of the tank filler neck five seconds after it has switched off, so that the rest of the fuel can flow out of the pump nozzle into the filler neck.
- ▸ Close fuel filler door until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 240*.

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the **Technical Data** section ⇨ *page 299*.

WARNING

Fuel ignites easily and can cause serious burns and other injuries.

- – Do not smoke or have an open flame in the area when fueling your vehicle or filling a fuel container because this increases the risk of an explosion.
- – Follow legal requirements when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
- – For safety reasons, we recommend not carrying fuel containers. The container could be damaged in an accident and leak fuel.
- – If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, note the following:
  - – Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is in or on the vehicle. Static electricity is discharged when filling which can cause the fuel vapors to ignite and increases the risk of an explosion. Always place the container on the ground when filling it.
  - – The fuel pump nozzle must be inserted as far as possible into the filler opening on the fuel container.
  - – If the fuel container is made of metal, the fuel nozzle must always be in contact with the container when filling it with fuel. This prevents static electricity from discharging.
  - – Never spill fuel in the vehicle or the luggage compartment. Evaporated fuel is explosive and increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Note

- – Remove spilled fuel from vehicle paint immediately, because it can damage paint.
- – Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank, otherwise fuel can leak out when the vehicle is warming up. ▸

Tips

If adverse weather conditions cause the fuel filler door to freeze shut, press on the center of the filler door with the heel of your hand and then try opening it again.

Tips

– Your vehicle is equipped with a misfueling guard. It allows the vehicle to be fueled only with the correct fuel pump nozzle.
– A worn or damaged nozzle or a nozzle that is too small may not be able to open the diesel misfueling guard. If this is the case, try turning the nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different fuel pump, or see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– The misfueling guard does not open when adding fuel from a fuel container. When refueling with a reserve canister, you must use the funnel stored in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 243, fig. 184*.

Fueling with reserve canister (emergency fueling)

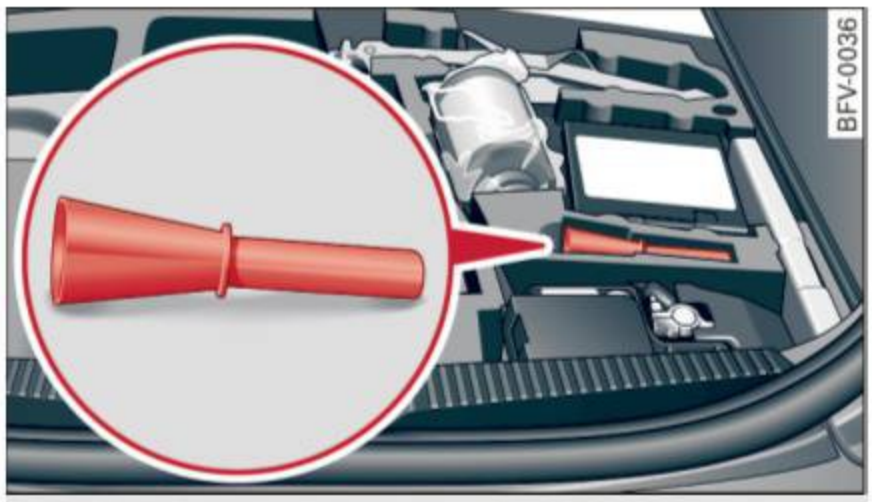


Fig. 184 Luggage compartment: funnel

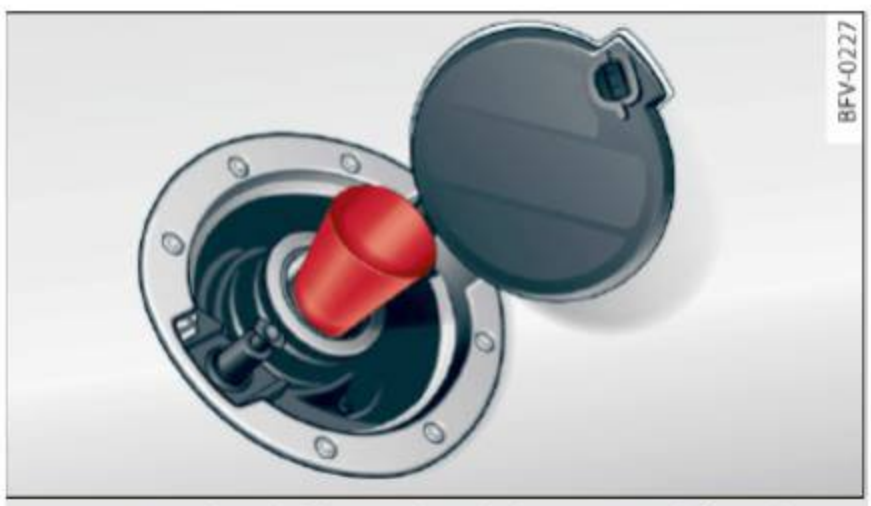


Fig. 185 Fuel tank filler neck with the mounted funnel

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Fueling procedure on page 242*.

- ▸ Press on the fuel filler door to open -arrow- ⇨ *page 242, fig. 182*.
- ▸ Remove the cargo floor ⇨ *page 281*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic floor panel ⇨ *page 50, fig. 54*.
- ▸ Remove the funnel from the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Insert the funnel into the tank filler neck all the way until it stops ⇨ *fig. 185*. Make sure that the ring on the funnel goes into the fuel tank filler neck.
- ▸ Guide the reserve canister filler tube into the funnel and start the emergency fueling.
- ▸ Remove the funnel after refueling and close the fuel filler door so that it latches shut.

Note

Remove any overflowing fuel from the vehicle paint immediately.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the fuel filler door lock is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.

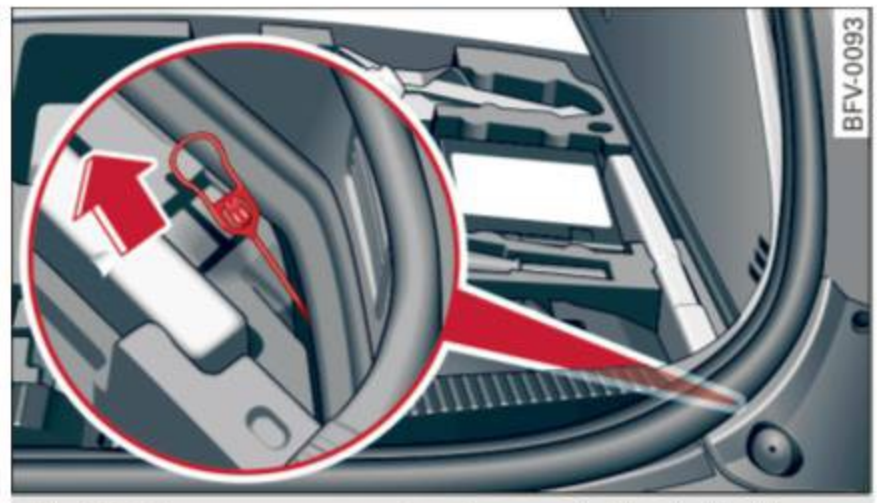


Fig. 186 Luggage compartment: cover in the right side trim panel

- ▸ Open the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ Lift the cargo floor.
- ▸ Loosen the strap from its holder and pull on it carefully ⇨ *fig. 186*.

Engine compartment

Working in the engine compartment

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Turn the engine off.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Set the parking brake.
- Place the selector lever in the P position.
- Let the engine cool down.
- Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially to the battery.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of personal injury.
- Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a large cloth when opening.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- If tests need to be performed with the engine running, there is additional danger due to moving components (such as the ribbed belt, alternator and radiator fan) and from the high voltage ignition system.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if a gear is selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby
- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and injury, never touch the following components when the engine is running or is being started:
  - Ignition cable
  - Other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system
- If you must check or perform work on the engine while it is running:
  - Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the P (park) position first.
  - Always proceed with extreme caution so that clothing, jewelry or long hair do not become caught in the radiator fan, fan belt or other moving components or do not come into contact with hot components. Tie back long hair before beginning work and do not wear clothing that can hang down into the engine.
- Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning: ▶

– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to mix the fluids up. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening/closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 187 Section from the driver's side footwell: release lever



Fig. 188 Unlocked hood: lever

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the engine compartment lid

- With the driver's door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 187*.
- Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the lever ⇨ *fig. 188* in the direction of the arrow. This releases the hooks.
- Open the hood.

Closing the engine compartment lid

- Push the hood down until you override the force of the struts.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.
– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

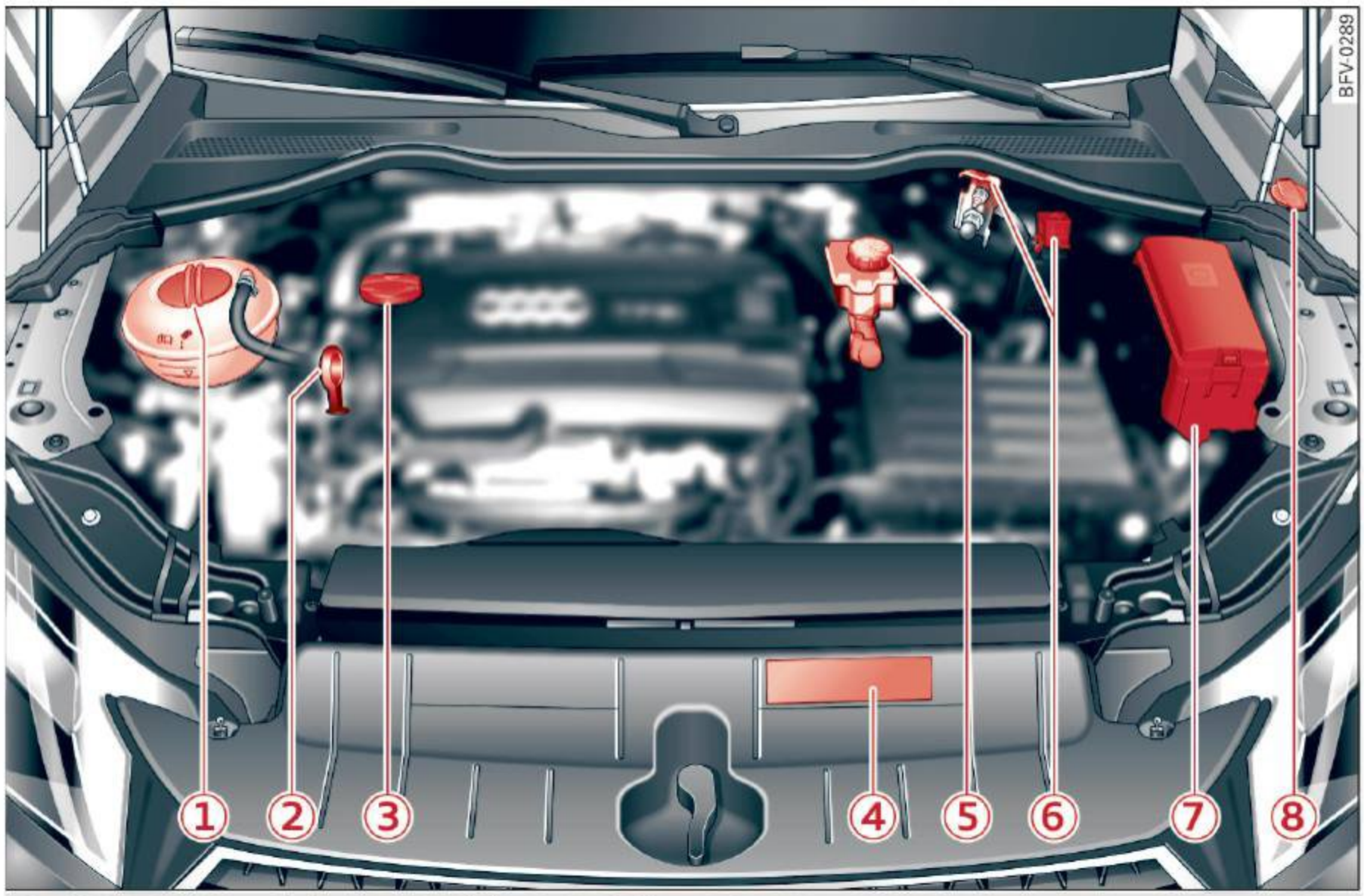


Fig. 189 Typical layout of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

① Coolant expansion tank (🌡) ⇨ *page 250*
② Engine oil dipstick ⇨ *page 248*
③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 248*
④ Engine oil label* with VW standard ⇨ *page 246*
⑤ Brake fluid reservoir (⭕) ⇨ *page 251*
⑥ Jump start point (+) under a cover, (-) body ground point ⇨ *page 293*
⑦ Fuse housing ⇨ *page 289*
⑧ Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) ⇨ *page 253*

The engine oil dipstick and the engine oil filling opening ⇨ *fig. 189* (items ② and ③) may be located in different places depending on the engine design.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 244*.

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Service Advisor.

If you must add oil between oil changes, use an oil that matches the Audi oil quality standard listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 246, fig. 189*.

Audi recommends Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends LongLife high performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Note

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
– Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage.

Tips

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Audi oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add a total of no more than 0.5 qt (0,5 l) of a high-quality "synthetic"oil that meets the following specifications.

– ACEA A3 or API SM with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.
– For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at **www.audiusa.com** or **www.audicanada.ca**.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 55*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 248*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 248*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 244*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

Tips

– **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the ▶

8S0012721BB

accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. An authorized Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level and adding engine oil

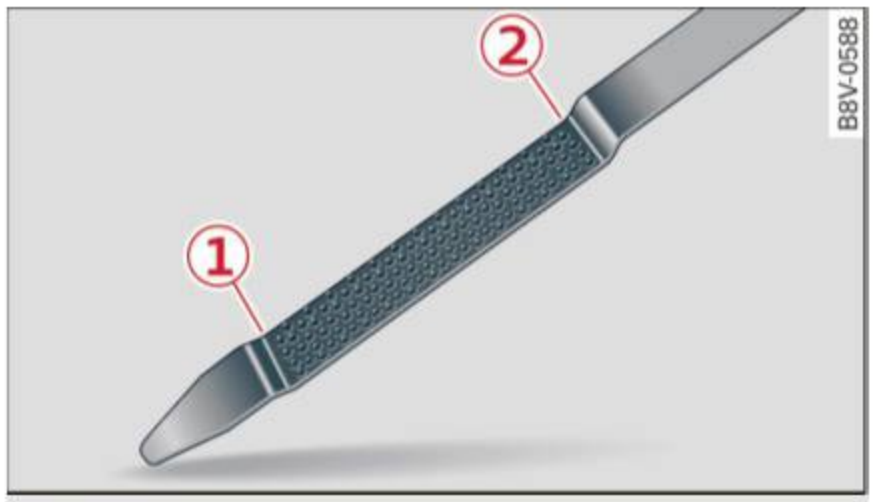


Fig. 190 Oil dipstick (example): checking the engine oil level



Fig. 191 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 244*.

Checking the engine oil level

– Park the vehicle on a level surface.
– Shut the engine off when it is warm. Wait approximately two minutes so that the engine oil can flow back into the oil pan.
– Open the hood ⇨ *page 245*.
– Remove the oil dipstick ⇨ *page 246, fig. 189*, wipe it off with a clean cloth and insert it all the way in again.
– Remove the oil dipstick again and then read the oil level ⇨ *table on page 248*.
– Add engine oil if necessary.

Area on oil dipstick ⇨ *fig. 190*.	
①	If the engine oil level is just before the marking ①, then engine oil must be added. See ⇨ ⓘ.
②	Do not add engine oil.

Adding engine oil

– Unscrew the cap ⇨ *fig. 191* for the engine oil filling opening ⇨ *page 246, fig. 189*.
– Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 246*.
– Check the oil level again after two minutes.
– Add a smaller amount of engine oil if necessary. The marking ② ⇨ *fig. 190* must not be exceeded ⇨ ⓘ.
– Screw the engine oil filler cap and slide the dipstick all the way in.

⚠ WARNING

– When adding engine oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
– You must seal the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
– Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

ⓘ Note

– The engine oil level must not be under the marking ① ⇨ *fig. 190*, because this increases the risk of engine damage.
– After adding engine oil, the oil level must not be above the marking ② ⇨ *fig. 190*, because this increases the risk of catalytic converter and/or engine damage. Do not start the engine. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have excess engine oil extracted if necessary.
– Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is not covered by the warranty. ▶

For the sake of the environment

– Engine oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground under any circumstances.
– Pay attention to legal requirements when disposing of empty oil containers.

Tips

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It would be best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 244*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
– Wear eye protection.
– To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
– When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
– Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
– Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
– Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

8S0012721BB

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 12*. However, we do recommend occasionally checking the coolant level manually.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G13	TL 774 J
G12++	TL 774 G

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40%, max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50%, max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

- Before the start of winter, have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
- If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
- Only refill with new coolant.
- Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

Adding coolant



Fig. 192 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 244*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 246, fig. 189*. The coolant level must be between the markings when the engine in cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the upper marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- Let the engine cool down.
- Place a cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 250* up to the upper marking.
- Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- Close the cap securely.

Coolant loss usually indicates there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized ▶

Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, a loss can come from the coolant boiling through overheating and being pushed out of the cooling system.

WARNING

The cooling system is pressurized and can become very hot. To reduce the risk of burns from hot coolant:

- Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. This increases the risk of burns.
- Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping coolant and steam by covering the coolant tank cap with a large, thick cloth.
- Turn the coolant tank cap counterclockwise slowly and keep light pressure on the cap.
- To reduce the risk of burns, do not allow any antifreeze or coolant to drip onto the exhaust system or hot engine components. The ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire under certain circumstances.
- The coolant additive and the coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, keep the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.

Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid

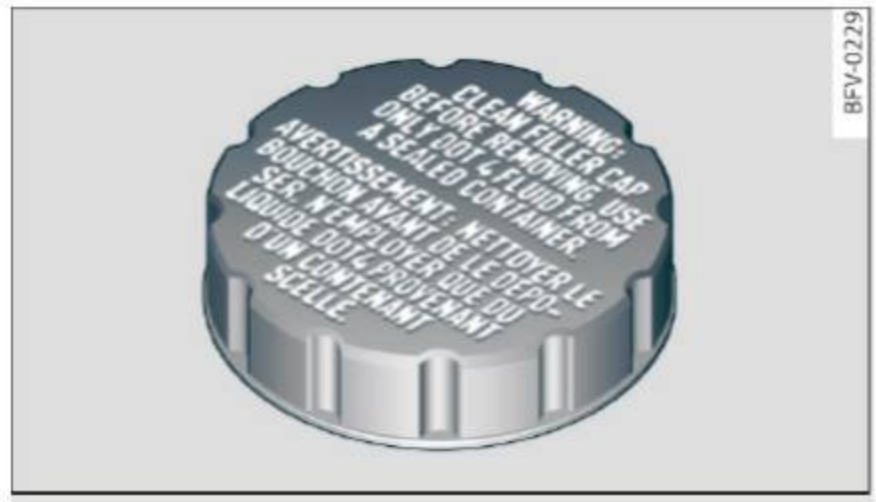


Fig. 193 Engine compartment: cover on the brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 244*.

Checking the brake fluid level

▸ Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 246, fig. 189*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Changing the brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed regularly by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This would impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
- To ensure the brake system functions correctly, only use brake fluids that comply with VW standard 501 14 or FMVSS-116 DOT 4.

▶

Note

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
– Do not get any brake fluid on the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Battery

General warnings about batteries

All of the batteries in your vehicle are practically **maintenance-free** and are checked during a vehicle inspection. Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc. should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Detailed warnings for the vehicle battery:

	Wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection.
	Fire, sparks, open flame and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Keep children away from battery acid and batteries.

WARNING

All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

Protect the vehicle battery against freezing if the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time so that it is not destroyed by “freezing” ⇨ *page 253*.

Vehicle battery

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time ⇨ *page 93*. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the vehicle battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the vehicle battery. The vehicle battery must be charged every month to reduce the risk of this happening ⇨ *page 253*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the vehicle battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the vehicle battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before the cold time of year.

Charging the vehicle battery



Fig. 194 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 30 amps/14.8 Volts**. The vehicle battery cables remain connected.

- ▸ Read the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General warnings about batteries on page 252* and ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 245*.
- ▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 194*.
- ▸ Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the **jump start pins** according to the instructions ⇨ *fig. 194*.
- ▸ Now insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charger terminal clamps.
- ▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 245*.

⚠ WARNING

- A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the vehicle battery in well-ventilated areas.
- A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). A frozen or thawed vehicle battery must not be charged and must not be used anymore. The battery housing can crack and battery acid can leak out if ice forms, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

- Only charge the vehicle battery through the connections in the engine compartment.
- Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the vehicle battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 195 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 246, fig. 189*. The reservoir capacity is found in ⇨ *page 299*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Note

- The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions in the respective climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
- Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid. ▸

– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder**: after a certain distance driven, a message appears in the Infotainment system display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on/off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection. Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Note

– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
– Calculating the time to the next oil change is interrupted when the vehicle battery is disconnected ⇨ *page 279*.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

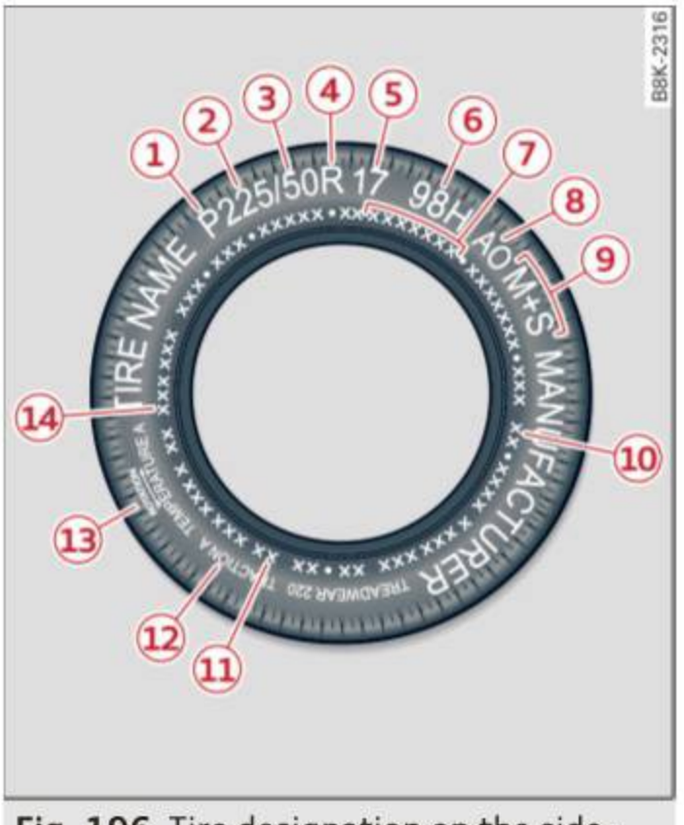


Fig. 196 Tire designation on the sidewall

B5001272IBB

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

P indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. T indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 270*.

“EXTRA LOAD”, “xl” or “RF” indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code “ZR”.

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2216 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2016.

⑧ Audi Original equipment tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be ▶

able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire has properties making it suitable to drive in mud or snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 271*.

⑬ Running direction

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or ▶

reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight ▶

(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs (68 kg) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 258, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall. ▶

8S0012721BB

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 256*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 270*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 264, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative ▶

comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2216 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2016. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 267*) and dividing by two. ▶

8S0012721BB

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 267* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▸Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ▸Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

The spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle - for example, if winter tires or wide tires are installed - so only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

On **all wheel drive** vehicles, all four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same ▸

circumference as the regular tires.

WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.
–Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage



Fig. 197 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear.
–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear. ▶

8S0012721BB

–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 197*. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 286*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can especially have a negative effect on handling, on the risk aquaplaning when driving through water, when driving ▶

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

through curves and when braking, which increases the risk of an accident.

Tire pressure



Fig. 198 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

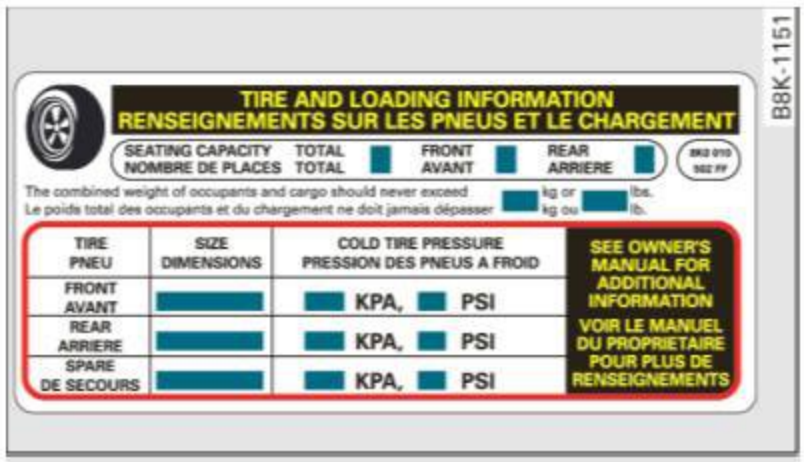


Fig. 199 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 198*, ⇨ *fig. 199*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 267*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 199* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System*: store the modified tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 274*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase ▸

the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 267, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tips

Audi recommends using the tire pressure specified for a normal load ⇨ *table on page 267* or for a full load when the vehicle is partially loaded.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 265, fig. 198*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2 people)				Maximum load			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
TT: 2.0L 4-Cylinder	245/45 R17 95Y High Performance	32	220	29	200	33	230	30	210
	245/40 R18 93H All Season	32	220	29	200	33	230	30	210
	245/40 R18 93Y High Performance	32	220	29	200	33	230	30	210
	245/35 R19 93Y High Performance	35	240	32	220	35	240	32	220
	255/30 R20 92Y High Performance	35	240	32	220	36	250	32	220
TTS: 2.0L 4-Cylinder	245/40 R18 93Y High Performance	32	220	29	200	33	230	30	210
	245/35 R19 93Y High Performance	35	240	32	220	38	260	32	220
	255/30 R20 92Y High Performance	35	240	32	220	39	270	33	230

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 265* and load limits ⇨ *page 267*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids ▶

8S0012721BB

plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 265, fig. 198*.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded. ▶

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS”on your vehicle’s placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 265, fig. 198*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from “XXX” kilograms or “XXX” pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 265, fig. 198*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▶ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 255, fig. 196*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 286, Finishing*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble ▶

8S0012721BB

rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 265*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

WARNING

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ❄ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains not only improve the driving in winter road conditions, but also the braking.

- Only install snow chains on the front wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*.
- Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Note the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
– Using snow chains that add more than 0.53 in (13,5 mm) of height can severely damage the wheel housings and other vehicle components. ▶

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be useful to switch on sport mode ⇨ *page 89*.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 265*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

– Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
– Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
– After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
– Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
– These tires may wear more quickly than others.
– Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 270* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 255, fig. 196*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. ▶

8S0012721BB

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. ▶

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the Infotainment system display with an indicator light (!) and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 274*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 265, fig. 199*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low.
– the tire has structural damage.
– the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 274*.
– the spare tire* is installed.

Indicator lights

(!) - Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 274*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual** - If TPMS appears after switching on the ignition or while driving and then the indicator light (!) in the instrument cluster also starts to blink for about one minute and then stays on permanently, there is a system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 274*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressures. You must check the tire pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the pressure monitor indicator may be delayed.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents. ▶

8S0012721BB

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tires with the identification “AO” ⇨ *page 262* have been matched with your Audi tire pressure monitoring system. We recommend that you use these tires.

Storing tire pressures

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

▸ Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 263*.
▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicles with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not direct the stream of water directly onto seals for the side windows, doors, luggage compartment lid or hood or onto the tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois.

WARNING

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car ▶

wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.
– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must retract the extendable rear spoiler* if necessary, and fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
– Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	⇨ *page 42*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ Camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary

Component	Situation	Solution
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 298*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 275*

[a] Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush.
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract

8S0012721BB

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Wool cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather dried stains: oil cleaning spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

- **Headlights/tail lights**
  - Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  - Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
- **Wheels**
  - Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  - Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.
- **Sensors/camera lenses**
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.

▶

- To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.

– **Decorative parts/trim**
- Never use chrome care or cleaning products.

– **Paint**
- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.

– **Instrument cluster**
- Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and has cooled off before cleaning it.
- The instrument cluster and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could get scratched.
- Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.

– **Controls**
- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**
- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
- Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
- Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
- Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service and storage ▶

8S0012721BB

procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery.

Emergency assistance

General information

- ▸ Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. It you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Place the selector lever in the P position.
- ▸ Switch the emergency flashers on.
- ▸ Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/ compressor



Fig. 200 Luggage compartment: cargo floor closed

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit and compressor are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

- ▸ Push on the plastic handle and lift up the cargo floor.
- ▸ Open the cargo floor.

Completely retract the vehicle jack arm before storing the vehicle jack*.

WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

- Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
- The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
- Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
- Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Tips

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 281, General information*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position.
- ▸ Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 282*.

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 201 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the spare tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire repair set is able to be used at temperatures as low as – 4 °F (– 20 °C).

The tire mobility kit may not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 201*.
– If the rim is damaged ②.
– if you drove with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③.

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothes.
– If tire sealant gets in your eyes or on your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothes immediately if they get tire sealant on them.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek immediate medical attention.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.

Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor*.
– Obey all laws.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

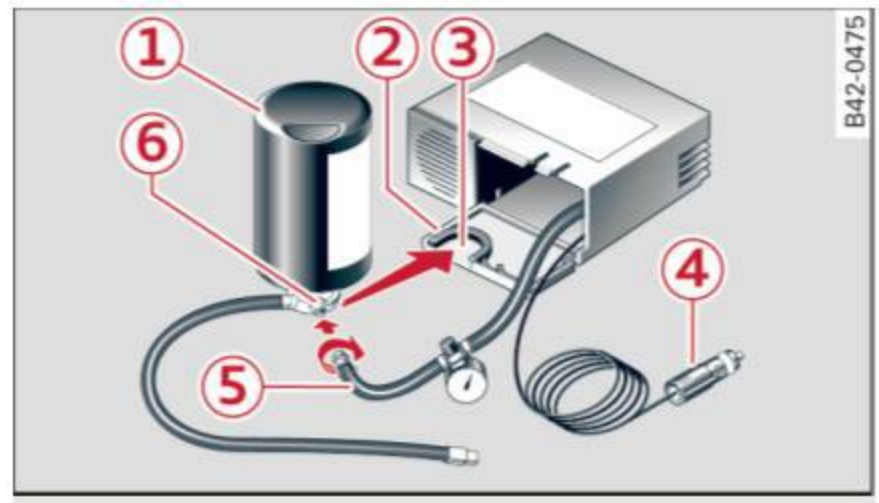


Fig. 202 Components of the tire mobility kit

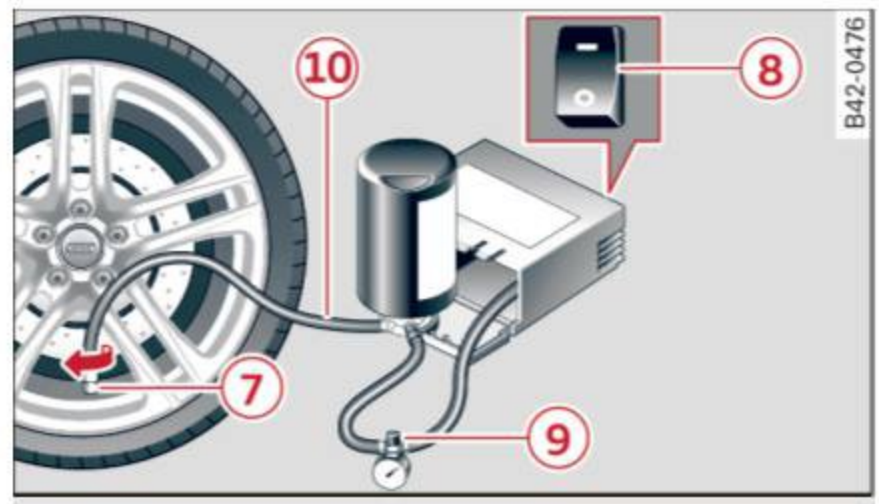


Fig. 203 Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 281*.

Installing the tire mobility kit

▸ Open the cover ② on the compressor ⇨ *fig. 202*.
▸ Remove the connector ④ and pressure hose ⑤ with pressure gauge from the housing. ▶

- ▸ Install the compressor pressure hose ⑤ onto the flange ⑥ on the tire sealant bottle ①.
- ▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening ③ on the compressor cover.
- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- ▸ Install the filler hose ⑩ on the valve ⑦ ⇨ *fig. 203*.
- ▸ Connect the plug ④ ⇨ *fig. 202* to a socket in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch on the ignition.

Inflating a tire

- ▸ Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *fig. 203* on the compressor into position **I**.
- ▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- ▸ If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 ft (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Pump up the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

ⓘ Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Adhere the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- ▸ If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

⚠ WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration, braking sharply, and fast cornering.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

ⓘ Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Replacing wheels

Preparation

You must complete the preparation before changing a tire.

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 281, General information*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position.
- ▸ Lay out the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 281* and the spare tire ⇨ *page 287*.

⚠ WARNING

If you are changing a tire on a steep hill, use a block or similar object to block the opposite wheel to prevent the vehicle from moving. ▶

8S0012721BB

WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in P (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 185*.

Tips

Obey all laws.

Removing the cover



Fig. 204 Wheel: wheel hub cover



Fig. 205 Wheel: wheel bolts with caps

Wheel hub covers*

- ▸ Insert the hook (from the vehicle tool kit) into the hole on the wheel hub cover ⇨ *fig. 204*.
- ▸ Remove the wheel hub cover.

Wheel bolts with caps*

- ▸ Slide the plastic clip (from the vehicle tool kit) onto the cap until it engages ⇨ *fig. 205*.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 206 Changing a tire: loosen the wheel bolts

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench (from the vehicle tool kit) all the way onto the wheel bolt.
- ▸ Turn the wheel bolt approximately one turn to the left -arrow-. To reach the required torque, hold the end of the wheel wrench. If the wheel bolt will not loosen, press carefully on the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold onto the vehicle securely while during this and make sure your stance is stable.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only loosen the wheel bolts gently (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack*.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle jack

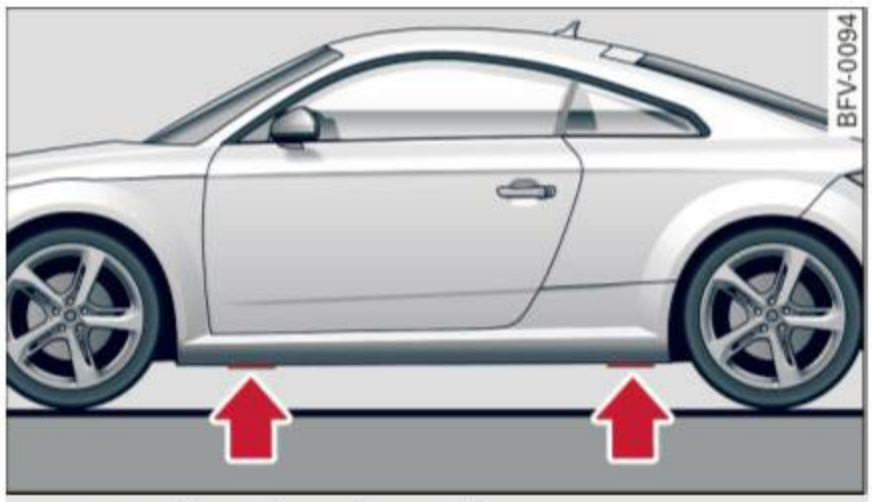


Fig. 207 Sill: markings (example)

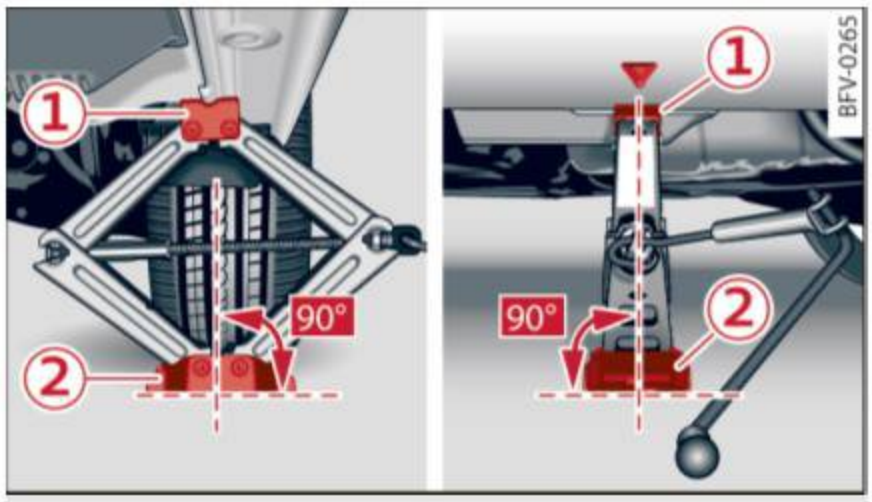


Fig. 208 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Place the vehicle jack* (vehicle tool kit) on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad (such as a rubber mat) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Find the marking on the sill that is closest to the tire that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 207*. Behind the marking, there is a lifting point on the side sill for the vehicle jack*.
- ▸ Turn the vehicle jack* located under the mounting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm ① ⇨ *fig. 208* is located under the designated mounting point.
- ▸ Align the vehicle jack* so the arm ① engages in the designated mounting point in the side sill and the base ② lies flat on the ground. The base ② must be directly under the mounting point ①.
- ▸ Continue raising the vehicle jack* until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

⚠ WARNING

– Make sure the vehicle jack* is stable. There is a risk of injury when the ground is slick or soft, because the vehicle jack* could slide or sink.
– Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack* provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack designed for another vehicle, your vehicle can slide and cause injury.
– Position the vehicle jack* only at the designated mounting points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack* could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never start the engine when the vehicle is raised.
– To reduce the risk of injury, support the vehicle securely with suitable stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
  – If work has to be done under the vehicle, ensure that it is safely supported on suitable stands – risk of injury!
  – Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!

! Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack* only at the designated mounting points on the side sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

Removing and mounting a wheel



Fig. 209 Wheel: internal hex socket to turn the wheel bolts



Fig. 210 Wheel: alignment pin in the top hole

Removing a wheel

- ▸ Remove the top wheel bolt completely using the hex socket in the screwdriver handle (in the vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 209* and place it on a clean surface.
- ▸ Install the alignment pin (from the vehicle tool kit) by hand into the empty hole ⇨ *fig. 210*.
- ▸ Remove the rest of the wheel bolts.
- ▸ Remove the wheel ⇨ (!). The alignment pin remains in the hole while doing this.

Install a wheel

Read the directions on ⇨ *page 286* when installing unidirectional tires.

- ▸ Slide the wheel on over the alignment pin ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Install the wheel bolts and tighten gently using the hex socket.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pin and also tighten the remaining wheel bolt.
- ▸ Carefully lower the vehicle using the vehicle jack*.
- ▸ Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern using the wheel wrench.

The wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily. Check the contact surfaces for the wheel and hub. Contaminants on these surfaces must be removed before installing the wheel.

WARNING

Never use the hex socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. Using the hex socket will not achieve the required tightening torque, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor/ceramic brake rotor* and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Tips

- – When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 286*.
- – The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire profile is identified by arrows that point in the running direction on the tire sidewall. You must always adhere to the specified running direction. This is necessary ensure the tire's optimum performance in regard to adhesion, running noise, friction and hydroplaning.

To benefit fully from the advantages of the unidirectional tire design, you should replace faulty tires as soon as possible and restore the correct running direction on all of the tires.

Finishing

- ▸ Reinstall the caps on the wheel bolts if necessary.
- ▸ Store the vehicle tool kit in its designated place. ▶

- If the removed wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, store it securely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 185*.
- Check the tire pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- Check the tire pressure and store it in the Infotainment system.
- The wheel bolt tightening specification must be 90 ft lbs (120 Nm). Check it as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then.
- Have the faulty wheel replaced as quickly as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 262* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

– **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
– **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
– **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lb (120 Nm).**
– **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
– **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

– If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 262*.
– Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
– In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
– Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Spare tire

General information

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)



Fig. 211 Luggage compartment: spare tire

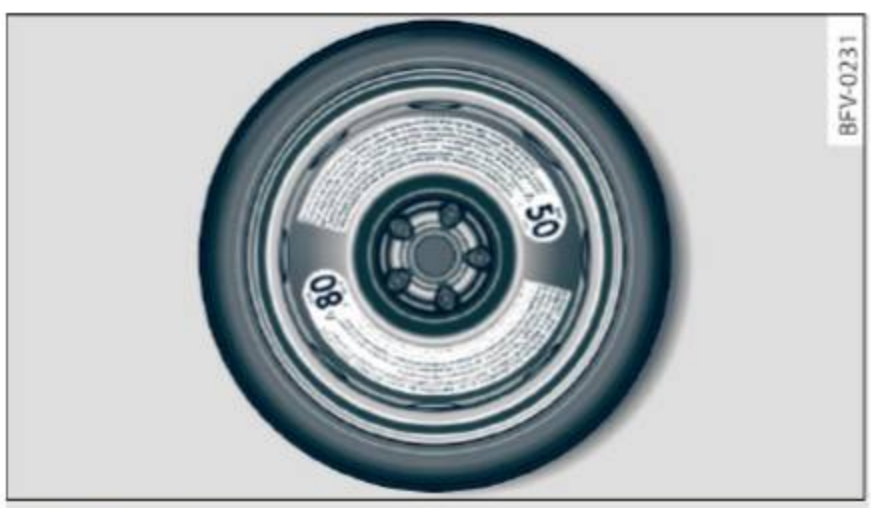


Fig. 212 Spare tire (example)

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if ▶

necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

Removing the spare tire

- ▸ Turn the handle ⇨ *fig. 211* ① counter-clockwise.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.

Removing the vehicle jack

- ▸ Lift up the cover on the right side of the luggage compartment and remove the vehicle jack.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare wheel in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

- – After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure is available on ⇨ *page 265, fig. 199*.
- – If the spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
- – The spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.
- – After mounting the compact spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure of the compact spare tire must be 61 psi (420 kPA); otherwise, you risk having an accident.
- – Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h). You risk having an accident.
- – Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering. You risk having an accident.
- – Never drive using more than one spare wheel and tire. You risk having an accident.
- – Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.
- – For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.
- – Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident. Never store the inflatable spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.
- – Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

Fuses and bulbs

Electrical fuses

Replacing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.



Fig. 213 Steering column area: cover

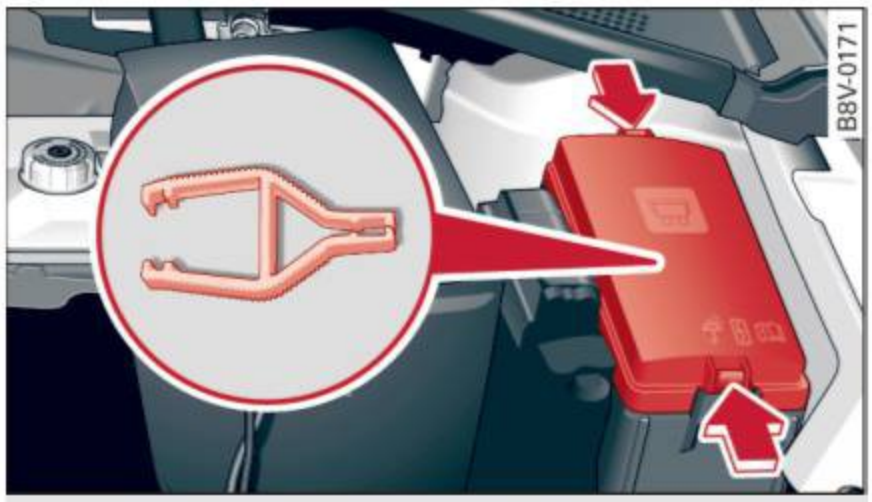


Fig. 214 Left side of the engine compartment: fuse cover

The individual circuits are protected by safety fuses. The fuses are located in the interior and in the engine compartment.

Fuses in the interior

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 290*.
- ▸ Remove the cover ⇨ *fig. 213*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover in the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 214*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuses in the engine compartment

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 291*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse panel cover ⇨ *fig. 214*.
- ▸ Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover ⇨ *fig. 214*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
– Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

8S0012721BB

Interior fuse assignment

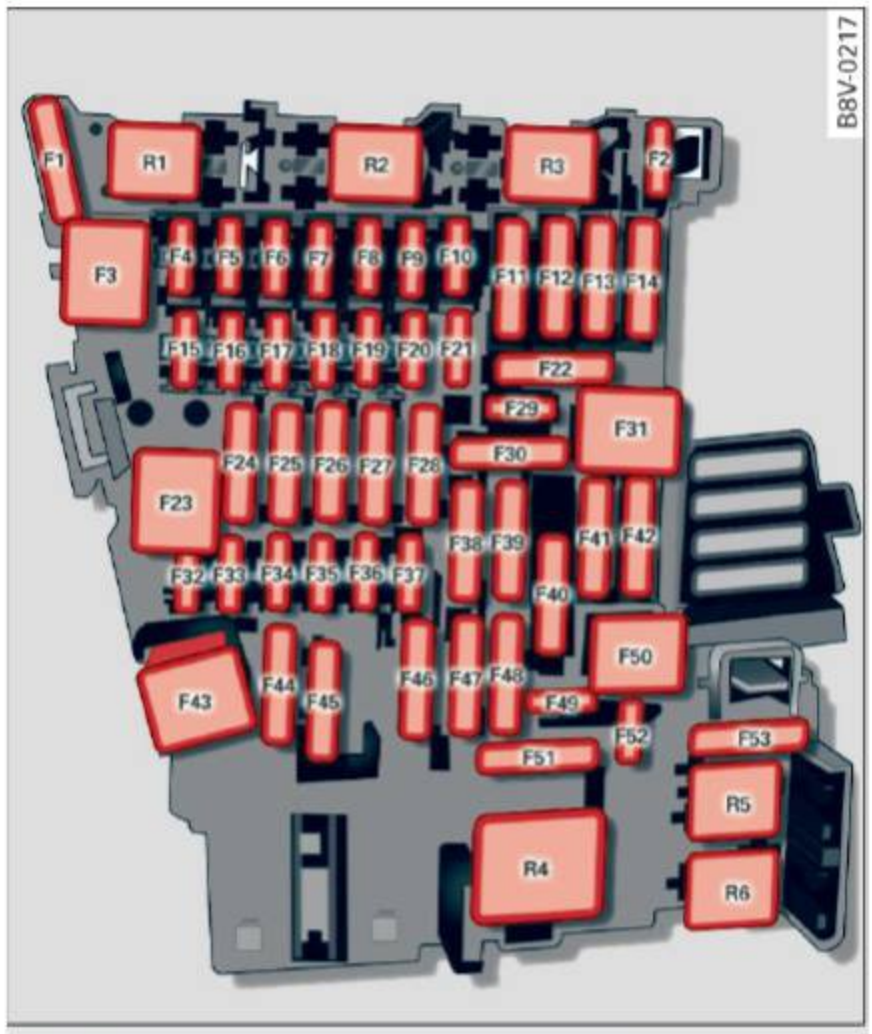


Fig. 215 Vehicle interior: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
F1	Power top control module (Roadster)
F2	Power top control module (Roadster)
F3	ESC control module
F4	Central computer processor (MIB-2)
F5	Gateway
F6	Anti-theft alarm system
F7	Climate control system, selector lever (automatic transmission), parking heater, rear window heater relay coil
F8	Diagnosis, electrical parking brake switch, light switch, rain/light sensor, interior lighting
F9	Steering column switch module
F10	Display
F11	Haldex clutch
F12	MMI area
F13	Adaptive dampers control module
F14	Climate control system blower
F15	Electronic steering column lock
F16	MMI components, safety belt microphone (Roadster)
F17	Instrument cluster
F18	Rearview camera
F19	Convenience key system control module
F20	Power lumbar support adjustment
F22	Front passenger's side neck heating (Roadster)
F23	Right exterior lighting, on-board computer (right)
F25	Driver's side door (for example power windows)
F26	Seat heating
F28	AMI High media port
F29	On-board computer
F31	Left on-board computer
F32	Driver assistance systems
F33	Airbag
F34	Socket relay, interior sound, back-up light switch, temperature sensor, oil level sensor
F35	Diagnosis, headlight range control system, air quality sensor, automatic dimming rearview mirror
F36	Right cornering light / right LED-headlight
F37	Left cornering light / left LED-headlight
F38	Engine control module, ESC control module
F39	Front passenger's side door (for example power windows)
F40	Cigarette lighter, sockets
F41	SCR relay and delivery unit
F42	Central locking area
F43	On-board computer
F45	Power adjustable driver's side seat
F46	Driver's side neck heating (Roadster)
F49	Starter, clutch sensor
F50	ESC valves
F53	Rear window defogger

The power seats* are protected via **circuit breakers** that automatically switch on after a few seconds after the overload has been reduced.

Left engine compartment fuse assignment

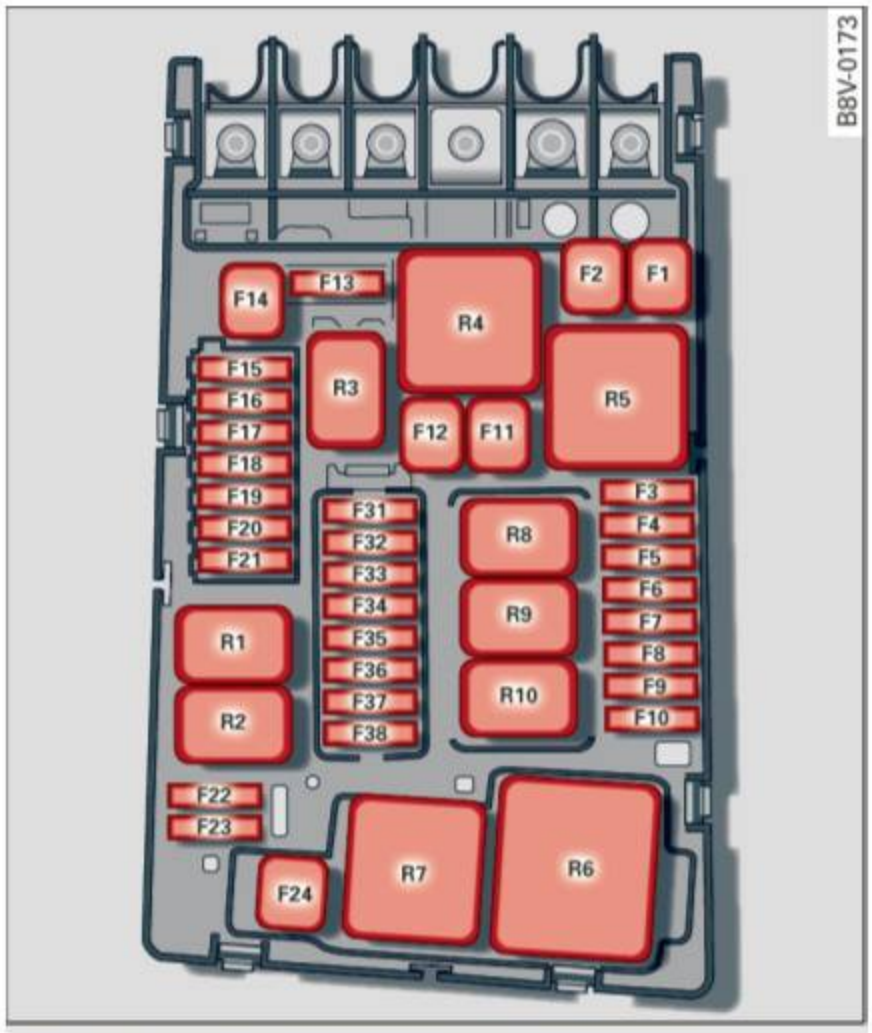


Fig. 216 Engine compartment: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
F1	ESC control module
F2	ESC control module
F3	Engine control module
F4	Engine cooling, engine components, auxiliary heater coil relay (1+2), secondary air injection pump relay
F5	Engine components, tank system
F6	Brake light sensor
F7	Engine components
F8	Oxygen sensor
F9	Engine components, exhaust door, glow time control module
F10	Fuel injectors, fuel control module
F11	Auxiliary heater heating element 2
F12	Auxiliary heater heating element 3
F13	Automatic transmission control module
F15	Horn
F16	Ignition coil
F17	ESC control module, engine control module
F18	Terminal 30 (reference voltage)
F19	Windshield wipers
F20	Horn
F22	Terminal 50 diagnosis
F23	Starter
F24	Auxiliary heater heating element 1
F32	LED headlights

Bulbs

Message

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights. However, if a light bulb needs to be replaced, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

8S0012721BB

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, you must thaw the frozen battery completely, otherwise it could explode.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 244*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected.

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. ▶

When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!



Fig. 217 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables and charger

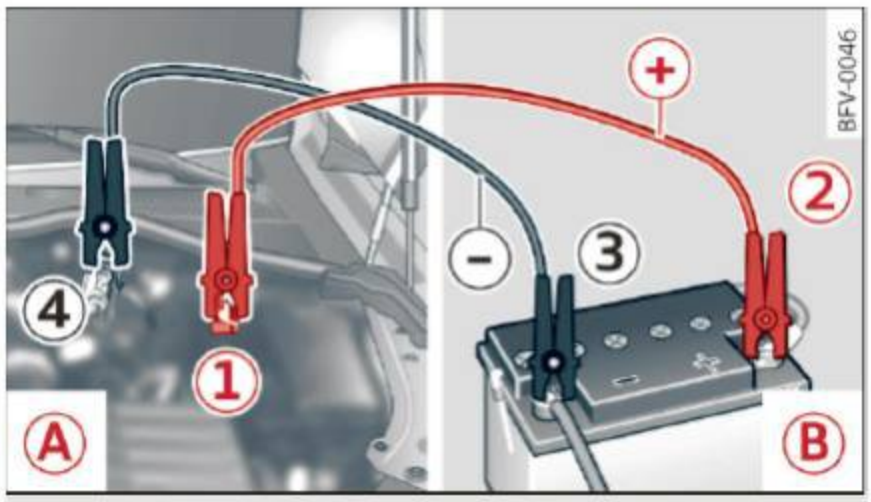


Fig. 218 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: A - discharged vehicle battery, B - booster battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

- ▸ Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

- ▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 217*.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ⇨ *fig. 218* ① (bolt under the red cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started Ⓐ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓑ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓑ.
4. Connect the other end to the **jump start pin** ④ ("negative") of the vehicle to be started Ⓐ.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓑ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- ▸ Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓐ in the usual manner.
- ▸ If the engine fails to start, do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.
- ▸ With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.
- ▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their metal parts in full contact with the battery terminals.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.
– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 244*.

▶

8S0012721BB

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 218*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 294* and ⇨ *page 295*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop



Fig. 219 Front bumper: cover



Fig. 220 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

- Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 281*.
- Press inward on the *upper left* side of the cap to remove it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 219*.
- Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 220* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Rear towing loop

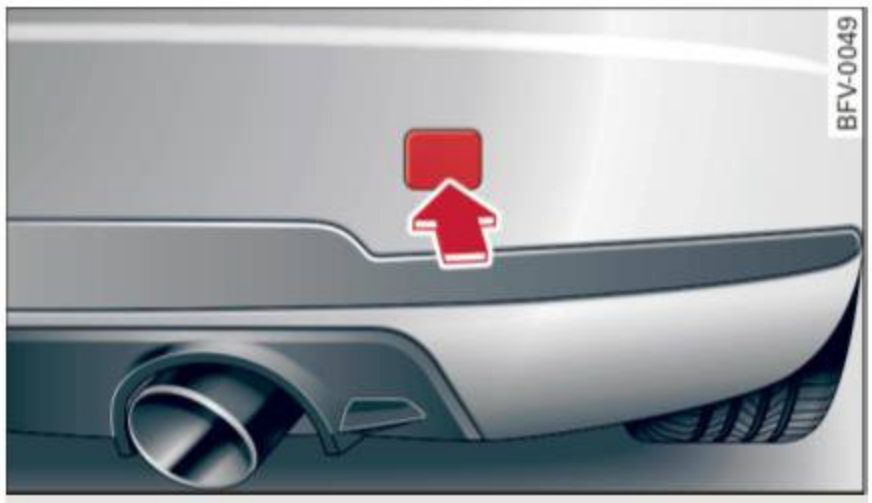


Fig. 221 Rear bumper: cover



Fig. 222 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

There are threads located behind the right side of the rear bumper where a towing loop can be installed.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 281*.
- ▸ To remove from the bumper, push the cap inward in the *lower* area -arrow- and lift it up in the *upper* area ⇨ *fig. 221*.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 222* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck



Fig. 223 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.



Fig. 224 Front lifting point

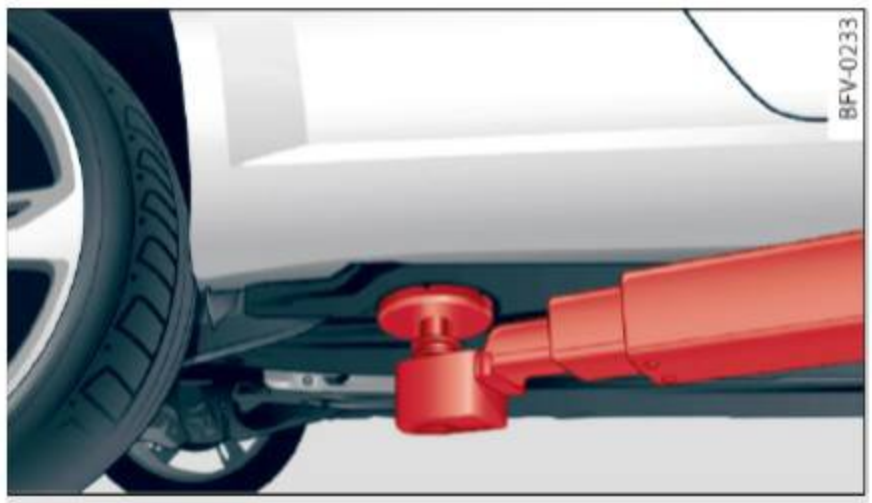


Fig. 225 Rear lifting point

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 224* and ⇨ *fig. 225*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

The vehicle jack mode* must be activated so that the automatic adjustment of the Adaptive Air Suspension* does not make it more difficult to raise the vehicle with the floor jack.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 224*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 225*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 285*.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 224* and ⇨ *fig. 225*.
  - Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
  - **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**

▶

– **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.**

Technical data

Vehicle specifications



Fig. 226 Windshield (front left side): VIN

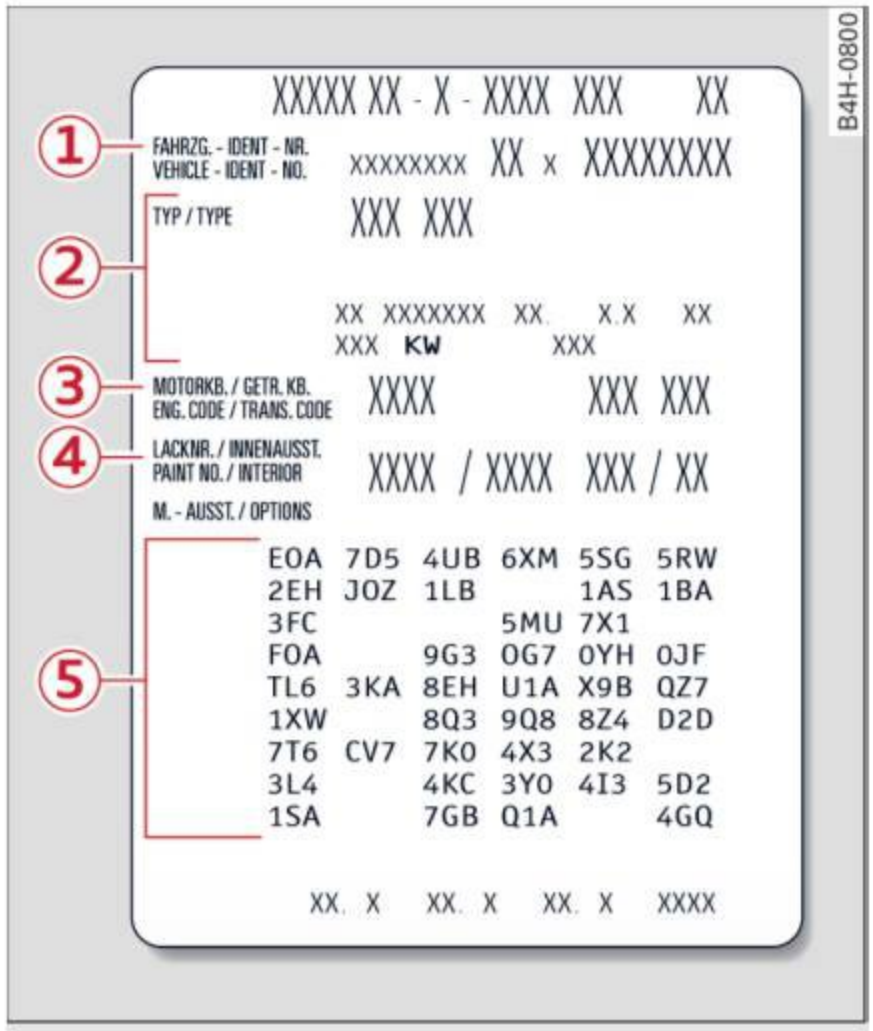


Fig. 227 Vehicle identification label

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) in the Infotainment system

- Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**.

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The VIN can be found in the Infotainment system, on the vehicle data label and under the windshield on the driver's side* ⇨ *fig. 226*.

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 227* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The information of the vehicle identification label can also be found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

High voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed on the driver's side B-pillar.

WARNING

– The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

– Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

– The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
– Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle Ioads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
– Always observe local regulations.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model, equipment and measuring methods used in each market.

		TT	TTS
Length	in (mm)	164.7 (4,184)	165.0 (4,191)
Width	in (mm)	72.1 (1,832)	72.1 (1,832)
Width across the mirrors	in (mm)	77.4 (1,966)	77.4 (1,966)
Height at curb weight	in (mm)	53.3 (1,353)	52.9 (1,343)

When driving on poor roads, by curbs and on steep ramps, make sure that low-hanging components such as the spoiler and exhaust system do not come into contact with these or they could be damaged. This applies especially when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Capacities

Fuel tank	gal (l)	approx. 14.5 (55)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	gal (l)	approx. 2.4 (9.0)

Gasoline engines

TT Coupe 2.0, 4 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	220 @ 4500 - 6200
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	258 @ 1600 - 4400
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121 (1984)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	⇨ *page 240*	

TTS Coupe 2.0, 4 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	292 @ 5400 - 6200
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	280 @ 1900 - 5300
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121 (1984)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	⇨ *page 240*	

[1)] For specific engine oil capacities, please see the most current information for the USA at http://www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance or for Canada at http://www.audi.ca/ca/brand/ en/your_audi/audi_services_and/Care_and_Maintenance/schedule.html or call 1 (800) 822-2834.

Consumer information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the ▶

8S0012721BB

scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 244*.

⚠ WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always switch off the ignition before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in P (Park position) and the park brake is applied. ▶

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Do not use license plate brackets in the front area that are different from the one installed at the factory, or add additional license plate brackets.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 244*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠. ▶

8S0012721BB

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Audi side assist*
– Cell phone package*
– Convenience key*
– Electronic immobilizer
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Remote control key

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

A

A/C (climate control system) 52
Accessories 303
Active lane assist 72
  Activating vibration warning 74
  Adjusting steering time 74
  Cleaning the camera area 276
  Indicator light 73
  Messages 73
  Switching on/off 73
Adaptive dampers 79
Adaptive light 79
Adaptive light (indicator light) 17
Additional phone 115, 175
Adjusting air distribution (Climate control system) 52
Adjusting the air vents 53
Adjusting the center console lighting 39
Adjusting the sound 178
Adjusting the temperature (climate control system) 52
Advanced Airbag System
  Children 223
  Components 204
  Front airbags 202
  How the components work together 206
Airbag 197
  Indicator light 15
Airbag system 217
  Advanced Airbag-System 201
  Care 212
  Child restraints 223
  Components (front airbags) 204
  Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat 198
  Disposal 212
  Front airbags 201
  How do the front airbags work? 207
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 204
  Important information 197
  Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system 215
  Knee airbags 213
  Monitoring 209
  PASSENGER AIR BAG light 209
  Repairs 212
  Safety instructions 211
  Side airbags 215
  Side curtain airbags 218
  Warning/Indicator lights 209
  When must the system be inspected? . . . 209
Alarm system
  refer to Anti-theft alarm system 25, 30
Alignment pin (changing the wheel) 281
All season tires 270
All weather lights 36
All wheel drive 91
Alternative routes 142
Ambient lighting 38
AMI
  refer to Audi music interface 161
Android Auto
  refer to Audi smartphone interface 172
Announcements (settings)
  refer to Voice guidance 142
Anti-freeze
  Windshield washer system 253
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 88
Anti-slip regulation 88
Anti-theft alarm system 30
Apple CarPlay
  refer to Audi smartphone interface 172
Armrest 45
Ashtray 46
Aspect ratio (video) 166
Audi connect 126
  Data connection 131
  Data protection 133
  Services (overview) 128
  Setup 126
Audi magnetic ride
  refer to Adaptive dampers 79
Audi music interface 161
Audi music stream
  refer to Wi-Fi 159
Audio files 163
Audio player
  Bluetooth audio player 158
  Wi-Fi audio player 159
Audio track 166
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 301
Audi smartphone interface 172, 176
Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 8

8S0012721BB

AUTO
Automatic climate control system 52
Automatic headlights 36
Auto Lock (central locking) 25
Automatic belt retractor 193
Automatic climate control system
refer to Climate control system (automatic) .52
Automatic key 25
Automatic transmission 61
Driving tips 64
Emergency mode 68
Hill descent control 66
Kick-down 67
Launch Control-Program 67
malfunction 63
Selector lever emergency release 69
Selector lever lock 63
Selector lever positions 62
Shifting manually 66
Steering wheel with shift paddles 66
tiptronic 66
Automatic wipe/wash system 41
Automatic zoom (navigation) 145
Auto Safety Hotline 187
AUX input 161
Average fuel consumption 23
Average speed 23
Avoid damaging the vehicle 55

B

BACK button 96
Balance (sound) 178
Bass (sound) 178
Battery
Jump starting 292
Before driving 180
Better route (navigation) 149
Blended gasoline 240
Blower (climate control system) 52
Bluetooth
Audio player 158
Connecting a cell phone 114
Settings 176
Boost 24
Booster seats 230
Boost pressure indicator 24
Brake fluid
Checking the brake fluid level 251
Brakes 89
Brake assist system 88
Brake booster 89
Brake fluid 251
Electromechanical parking brake 60
Indicator light 10
New brake pads 89
Braking
Brake assist 88
Emergency braking function 60
Worn brake pads 15
Break-in security feature 25
Breaking in
New engine 55
New tires 262
Browser
refer to Media center 164
Bulb failure (indicator light) 16
Bulb replacement 291
Buttons
Control panel (MMI) 96
Multifunction steering wheel 20, 22

C

Cable (USB adapter/AUX connector cable) . 161
California Proposition 65 Warning 244
Battery specific 252
Call list 117
Call options 124
Capacities
Fuel tank 299
Washer fluid reservoir 299
Care 275
Cargo area
refer to Luggage compartment 185
CD drive (media drives) 157
Cell phone
Playing music 158
also refer to Telephone 114
Central locking 25
Central locking switch 29
Emergency locking 30
Luggage compartment lid 30
Power windows 32

Remote control key ... 27
Setting ... 29
Certification ... 304
Changing engine oil ... 249
Changing light bulbs ... 291
Charging the battery (mobile devices) ... 161
Child restraint
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat ... 198
Child restraints
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? ... 239
Child restraint system anchors ... 235
Child safety ... 221
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats ... 225
Tether anchors ... 238
Tether straps ... 238
Child safety seat
Unused safety belts on the rear seat ... 227
Child safety seats
Booster seats ... 230
Convertible child seats ... 228
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? ... 225
Infant seats ... 227
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system ... 237
LATCH system ... 237
Lower anchorages ... 236
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook ... 237
Safety instructions ... 225
Child seats ... 227
Securing ... 232
Cigarette lighter ... 46
Cleaning ... 275
Cleaning/removing ice from windows ... 277
Cleaning Alcantara ... 278
Cleaning artificial leather ... 278
Cleaning carbon parts ... 277, 278
Cleaning controls ... 277
Cleaning decorative parts and trim ... 277
Cleaning displays ... 277
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes ... 276
Cleaning plastic parts ... 277
Cleaning rims ... 276
Cleaning seat covers ... 278
Cleaning tail lights ... 276
Cleaning textiles ... 278
Cleaning the Audi virtual cockpit ... 277
Cleaning the instrument cluster ... 277
Climate control system (automatic)
Adjusting air vents ... 52
Adjusting the air vents ... 53
Adjusting the temperature ... 52
Air distribution, air vents ... 52
AUTO (automatic mode) ... 52
Blower ... 52
Controls ... 52
Defrosting the windows ... 53
Drive select ... 79
Rear window defogger ... 53
Recirculation mode ... 53
Climate control system (manual)
Adjusting the air vents ... 53
Clock ... 174
Closing
Hood ... 245
Windows ... 32
Closing/opening
By remote control ... 27
With the central locking switch ... 29
With the convenience key ... 28
Closing and opening
With the door lock ... 30
Cockpit (overview) ... 6
Coming home ... 38
Command (voice recognition system) ... 108
Compartments ... 47
Compass in the mirror ... 43
Compliance ... 304
Conference call ... 118
Connection manager ... 175
Connections
refer to Media ... 155, 163
Connection settings ... 175
Consumer information ... 301
Consumer Information ... 187
Consumption (fuel) ... 23, 298
Contacting NHTSA ... 187

8S0012721BB

Contacts
- Additional directory . . . 176
- Importing/exporting . . . 123
- Memory capacity . . . 124
- Searching . . . 122
- Showing details . . . 123
- Storing as destination . . . 141

Control buttons . . . 98
Control knob with joystick function . . . 101
Convenience key
- Indicator light . . . 58
- Stopping the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) . . . 58

Convenience opening/closing . . . 32
Convertible child safety seats . . . 228
Convertible locking retractor
- Activating . . . 234
- Deactivating . . . 235
- Using to secure a child safety seat . . . 234

Cooling mode (climate control system) . . . 52
Cooling system
- Adding coolant . . . 250
- Coolant . . . 250
- Coolant level checking . . . 250
- Coolant temperature indicator . . . 8
- Indicator light . . . 12

Crash data recorder (EDR) . . . 94
Crosshairs . . . 137
Cruise control system
- Changing speed . . . 71
- Preselecting speed . . . 71
- Switching off . . . 71
- switching on . . . 70

Cup holders . . . 47
Current fuel consumption . . . 23

D

Data connection . . . 131
Data protection . . . 133, 155
Data recorder . . . 94
Date . . . 174
Date display . . . 174
Daytime running light . . . 36
Declaration of compliance
- Audi side assist . . . 304
- Cell phone package . . . 304
- Convenience key . . . 304
- Electronic immobilizer . . . 304
- Garage door opener (HomeLink) . . . 304
- Remote control key . . . 304

Defrosting (windows) . . . 53
DEF (instrument cluster) . . . 23
Deluxe automatic climate control
- *refer to* Climate control system (automatic) . . . 52

Determining correct load limit . . . 268
Digital compass . . . 43
Dimensions . . . 299
Dimming the rearview mirror . . . 40
Directory
- *refer to* Contacts . . . 122

Display
- *refer to* Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) . . . 20, 22

Distance driven . . . 23
Driver information system . . . 20, 22
- Indicator lights . . . 9
- Messages . . . 9
- On-board computer . . . 23
- Outside temperature display . . . 19
- Service interval display . . . 254

Drives
- *refer to* Media . . . 155, 163

Drive select . . . 79
Driving economically . . . 55
Driving safely . . . 180
Driving through water . . . 55
Driving time . . . 23
Dust filter
- *refer to* Pollutant filter . . . 51

DVD drive (media drives) . . . 156
Dynamic volume
- *refer to* System volume . . . 178

E

E-mail . . . 120
Economical route . . . 142
Electromechanical parking brake . . . 60
Electromechanical steering . . . 91
Electronic differential lock . . . 88
Electronic immobilizer . . . 25
Electronic speed limiter . . . 70

Electronic stabilization control (ESC) 88
Indicator light 14
Sport mode 89
Emergency assistance 281
Emergency braking function 60
Emergency flasher 38
Emergency fueling 243
Emergency locking the doors 30
Emergency locking the front passenger door 30
Emergency operation
Doors 30
Fuel filler door 243
Luggage compartment lid 31
Emergency release
Selector lever 69
Emergency starting 292
Emissions data 298
Energy management 93
Engine
Coolant 250
Starting 57, 58
Starting with jumper cables 292
Stopping 58
Engine compartment
Opening/closing the hood 245
Overview 246
Safety precautions 244
Engine control (indicator light) 15
Engine oil 246
Adding 248
Changing 249
Checking the oil level 248
Consumption 248
Dipstick 248
Indicator light 12
Oil consumption 247
Specification and viscosity 246
Temperature display 24
Engine speed limitation (indicator light) ... 15
Entering characters/numbers (speller) 102
Entering letters (speller) 102
Environment
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 249
Unleaded gasoline 240
Exterior lighting 36
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 39
Dimming 40
Heating 39
External voice operation 113

F

Factory default settings (MMI) 175
Fader (sound) 178
Fastening
Booster seats 230
Convertible child safety seats 228
Infant seats 227
Fast forwarding/rewinding (audio/video file) 163
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) 163
Fast route 142
Favorites
Media 165
Navigation 137
Telephone 119
File formats (media drives) 168
Floor mats 184
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 36
Folding the rear seats 49
Foot pedals 184
Footwell lighting 38
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving 55
Fueling 242
Leaks 245
Roof rack 48
Free text search 104
Media 165
Navigation 136
Radio 151
Telephone 122
Freeze protection
Coolant 250
Frequency band 150, 152
Front airbags
Description 201
How they work 207
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics .. 190

8S0012721BB

Front seats
Adjusting 182
Child restraints in the front seat 198
also refer to Seats 44
Fuel 240
Additives 240
Blended gasoline 240
Consumption 298
Current fuel consumption 23
Ethanol 240
Fuel filler neck 241
Fuel gauge 8
Fuel tank capacity 299
Gasoline additives 241
Indicator light 16
Saving fuel 55, 79
Fueling
Fuel filler door emergency release 243
Fuel gauge 8
Fuel tank capacity 299
Opening the fuel filler door 242
With reserve canister (emergency fueling) 243
Fuses
Assignment 290
Replacing 289

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) 33
Garment hooks 47
Gasoline 240
Octane rating 240
Recommendation 240
Generator (indicator light) 13
Global commands (voice recognition system) 109
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 257
Glove compartment 47
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 298

H

Handsfree 114
Headlight range control system 36
Headlight range control system (indicator light) 17
Headlights 37
Cleaning 276
Headlight range control system 36
Washer system 41
Heated
exterior mirrors 39
Rear window 53
Seats 53
Washer nozzles 41
Heating and ventilation system
Adjusting air vents 53
Hex socket 281
High voltage warning label 298
Hill descent control 66
Hill hold assist 61
also refer to Hill hold assist 61
Hold assist (hill) 61
Home address 137, 141
HomeLink (garage door opener) 33
Horn 6
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 235
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 204
How safety belt pretensioners work 195

I

Ignition (indicator light) 14
Imbalance (wheels) 263
Immobilizer 25
Important things to do before driving 180
Importing and exporting (contacts) 123
Improperly worn safety belts 195
Indicator lights 9
Airbag system 209
PASSENGER AIR BAG 209
Infant seats 227
Inflation pressure (tires) 265
Input
Using the MMI touch 98, 99
Using the speller 102
Input level (media) 166
Inspection interval 254
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 232

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 238
Instrument cluster 8
Instruments 8
Adjusting the lighting 39
Interior lighting 38
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 41
Internet
refer to Audi connect 126
Internet radio 160
iPod
refer to Audi music interface 161
iTunes tagging 150

J

Joystick function (MMI) 101
Jukebox 157
Jump-starting 292
Jumper cables 293

K

Key 25
Key not recognized 59
Key replacement 25
Key tag with PIN 26
Mechanical key 25, 26
Messages 58
Replacing the battery 27
Unlocking/locking 27, 28
Unlocking and locking 30
Key recognition (climate control system) . . . 51
Kick-down
Automatic transmission 67
Knee airbags 213
Description 213
How they work 214
Important safety instructions 215

L

Lane assist
refer to Active lane assist 72
Lap timer 74
Evaluating recorded times 76
Starting 75
LATCH 235
Description 236
Installing a child restraint 237
Location 236
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 237
Launch Control-Program (automatic transmission) 67
Leather care/cleaning 278
Leaving home 38
License agreement (MMI) 179
Lifting points (vehicle jack) 285
Light
Coming/Leaving home 38
Headlight flasher 37
Headlights 37
Low beam headlights 36
Switching daytime running lights on and off 37
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 36
Indicator light 17
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 41
Lighting
Exterior 36
Interior 38
Lights
Daytime running lights 36
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 36
Headlight range control system 36
Interior/reading lights 38
Parking light 36
Listening to music
refer to Media 155, 163
Loading the luggage compartment 185
Locking/unlocking
By remote control 27
With the central locking switch 29
With the convenience key 28
Locking and unlocking
On the door lock 30
Low beam headlight 36
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) 235
Luggage compartment
Cover 49
Increasing the size 49
Loading 185

8S0012721BB

Luggage compartment lid
Emergency release 31
Opening/closing 30
Luggage rack 48
Lumbar support 44

M

Maintenance 301
Maintenance intervals 254
Making emergency call 122
Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) 15, 17
Map
Functions 144
Map contents 143
Operating 143
Settings 145
Update 135
Mechanical key 25, 26
Media 155, 163
Drives 156
Supported formats 168
Media center 164
Memory capacity
Directory 123
Jukebox 157
Memory card
SD card reader 156
Supported types/formats 168
MENU button 96
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 174
Menus/symbols 105
Messages 119
also refer to E-mail 120
Mirror
Dimming 40
Vanity mirror 40
Mirror compass 43
Mirrors
Adjusting the exterior mirrors 39
MMI
refer to Multi Media Interface 96
MMI search
refer to Free text search 104
MMI touch 98
MODE 22
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 209
MP3
refer to Jukebox 157
Multifunction steering wheel 20, 22
Buttons 21
Operating 20, 22
Multi Media Interface 96
Music collection
refer to Jukebox 157
Mute
refer to Muting 178
Muting 21, 178
myAudi
Configuring (Audi connect services) 127
Logging in in the vehicle 127
PIN 127

N

Natural leather care/cleaning 278
NAV/MAP button 135
Navigation 135
Control panel (MMI) 135
also refer to Map 143
Network connection (Wi-Fi) 130
NHTSA
Contacting 187
Number of seats 189

O

Occupant seating positions 181
Octane rating (gasoline) 240
Odometer 23
Oil
Indicator light 15, 16
also refer to Engine oil 246, 248
Oil change interval 254
On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD)
Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) 17
On-board computer 23
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
Data Link Connector (DLC) 18
Electronic speed limiter 70
On/Off knob (MMI) 96
Online destinations
refer to Point of interest search 139

Online map 146
Online media 160
Online services
refer to Audi connect 126
Opening
Fuel filler door 242
Hood 245
Windows 32
Opening/closing
With the central locking switch 29
With the convenience key 28
Opening and closing
On the door lock 30
Operating
Multifunction steering wheel 20, 22
Multi Media Interface 97
Voice recognition system 108
Options menu 101, 102
Outside temperature display 19
Overview (Cockpit) 6

P

Paint damage 277
Paint number 298
Parental control 167
Parking brake
Indicator light 11
also refer to Electromechanical parking brake 60
Parking light 36
Parking system
Adjusting the display/warning tone 86
Cleaning sensors/the camera 276
Cleaning the rearview camera 85
Malfunction 86
Parking system plus 83
Peripheral display 83
also refer to Parking systems 83, 84
Parking systems 82
Rear parking system 83
Rearview camera 84
Parking (automatic transmission) 64
Parts replacement 303
PASSENGER AIR BAG light 209
Paths (Owner's Manual) 98
Pause (audio/video file) 21, 163
Pedals 184
Peripheral display 83
Phone book
refer to Contacts 122
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 190
Playback (media) 163
Playlist 165
Point of interest 138
Point of interest search 139
Polishing 277
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 51
Pollutant filter 51
Power
seat adjustment 44
Power windows
Convenience opening/closing 32
Malfunction 33
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 194
Presets list
refer to Favorites 152
Presets (radio) 152
Pressure (tires) 273
Program guide
Radio 151
Programming (steering wheel button) 21
Prompt
refer to Command (voice recognition system) 107
Proper occupant seating positions 181
Proper safety belt position 194
Proper seating position
Front passenger 182
Occupants 181
Rear passengers 183
Protecting 277

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) 91
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 191

R

Radio 150
Presets 152
Radio text 151
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 36
Indicator light 17
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 41
Raising the vehicle 296
Random
refer to Shuffle 166
Range 23
Reading lights 38
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 30
Rear spoiler 92
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems 83, 84
Rearview mirror dimming 40
Rear window defogger 53
Recirculation mode (climate control system) 53
Recuperation 23
Refueling 241
Remote control
refer to Remote control key 25
Remote control key 25
LED 27
Personalizing 25
Replacing the battery 27
Unlocking/locking 27
Removing the caps (wheel bolts) 284
Removing the wheel hub covers 284
Repair manuals 301
Repairs
Airbag system 212
Replacement key 25
Replacing windshield wiper blades 42
Reporting Safety Defects 187
Reset
refer to Restart (MMI) 179
Reset button (trip odometer) 23
Resetting the trip odometer 23
Restart (MMI) 179
Retract
New brake pads 89
Retractor 193
Reverse (automatic transmission) 62
Rewinding (audio/video file) 163
Rims 269
Ringtone settings 124
Roaming
refer to Data connection 131
Roof rack 48
Roof load 48
Route criteria 142
Route guidance
refer to Navigation 135
Running direction (tires) 286

S

Safe driving 180
Safe driving habits 180
Safety
Airbag system 197
Belts 189
Correct seating position 181
Telephone 114
Safety belt position 194
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . . 194
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 196
Safety belts 189, 193
Cleaning 277
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 191
Fastening 193
Improperly worn 195
Indicator light 13
Indicator light (rear) 13
Not worn 191
Safety belt position 194
Safety belt tensioner 195
Safety instructions 192
Securing child safety seats 232
Special considerations for pregnant women 194
Unfastening 195
Warning/indicator light 189
Worn properly 191
Safety belt warning light 189
Safety equipment 180

Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 180
Safety instructions
for side curtain airbags 220
for using child safety seats 225
For using safety belts 192
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 211
Safety systems (indicator light) 15
Saving fuel
Recuperation 23
Scan (radio) 151
Screen
refer to Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 20, 22
Screwdriver 281
SD card reader 156
SDS
refer to Voice recognition system 107
Search
refer to Free text search 104
Search area (point of interest) 138
Searching for an entry 104
Seat heating 53
Seating capacity 189
Seating position
Driver 181
Front passenger 182
How to adjust the front seats 182
Incorrect seat position 183
Occupants 181
Rear passengers 183
Seats
adjusting 44
Correct seating position 181
Easy seat entry 45
Folding 49
Number of seats 189
Selecting a source
Multifunction steering wheel 22, 0
Selecting a source (media) 163
Selection menu 20, 98, 101, 102
Multifunction steering wheel 22
Selective wheel torque control 88
Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency operation 69
Position 62
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 196
Service interval display 254
Settings
Directory 124
Map 145
Media 166
Navigation 141
Radio 153
System 174
Telephone 124
Setting the language 174
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) 66
Shuffle 166
Side airbags
Description 215
How they work 217
Side assist 76
Adjusting the brightness 78
Cleaning the sensors 276
Sensor range 77
switching on and off 78
Side curtain airbags 218
Description 218
How they work 219
Safety instructions 220
SIM card reader 126
Snow chains 270
Socket 46
Software update
refer to System update (MMI) 177
Software (MMI)
License 179
Update 177
Version 177
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 239
Spare tire 287
Speed-dependent volume increase 178
Speed limiter 70
Speedometer 19
Speed warning system 70
Speller 102
Sport mode 89
START Engine STOP button 57
Starting (engine) 57

8S0012721BB

Steering
Electromechanical steering 91, 0
Indicator light 13
also refer to Electromechanical steering . . 91
Steering wheel
Adjusting 57
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) . . . 66
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel 20, 21, 22
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 268
Stopover (navigation) 140
Stopping (engine) 58
Storage compartments 47
Stored stations
refer to Favorites 152
Streaming
refer to Online media 160
Street View 146
S tronic (automatic transmission) 61
Subtitles (DVD) 166
Subwoofer (sound) 178
Sun visors 40
Swapping calls 118
Switching daytime running lights on and off 37
Switching tabs
refer to Multifunction steering wheel 20, 21, 22
Switching the ignition on 57
Symbols 105
Navigation 143
Traffic 148
also refer to Indicator lights 9
System settings (MMI) 174
System update (MMI) 177
System volume 178

T

Tachometer 8, 23
Technical data 298
Technical modifications 303
Telephone 114
Connecting 114
Dialing a number 117
Options during a phone call 118
Settings 124
Temperature display
Outside temperature 19
Temperature indicator
Coolant 8
Tether anchors 238
Tether strap 238
Text messages 119
Tie-downs 186
Tightening specification (wheel bolts) 286
Time 174
tiptronic (automatic transmission) 66
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) 281
Tires 255
All wheel drive 91
Low aspect ratio tires 271
Repair set 281
Replacing 283
Service life 263
Tire pressure 265
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 272, 273
Tire pressure table 266
Tread wear indicators 263
unidirectional 286
Unidirectional 257
Uniform tire quality grading 271
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 257
Tires and vehicle load limits 267
TMC
refer to Traffic information 148
Tone (sound)
refer to Adjusting the sound 178
Tool 281
touch
refer to MMI touch 98, 99
Towing
Tow trucks 294
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) . . . 273
Traffic information 147, 148
Traffic reports 144
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . . 68
Transport Canada 187
Treble (sound) 178
Turn signals 37

U

Unfastening safety belts 195
Uniform tire quality grading 271
Unlocking/locking
By remote control 27
With the central locking switch 29
With the convenience key 28
Unlocking and locking
On the door lock cylinder 30
Updating stations (radio) 150
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface 161

V

Vanity mirror 40
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 275
Dimensions 299
Identification number 298
Out of service 279
Raising 285
Specifications 298
Vehicle identification label 298
Vehicle battery 252
Charge level 93
Charging 13, 253
Energy management 93
Indicator light 13
Winter operation 252
also refer to Battery 252
Vehicle jack 281, 287
Lifting points 285
Vehicle tool kit 281
Version information 177
VIEW 22
VIEW button 20
VIN 298
Voice guidance 142
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel 20, 21, 22
Voicemail 121
Voice recognition system 21, 108
Commands 109
External 113
Settings 174
Volume 179
Volume 178
Multifunction steering wheel 21
Voice recognition system 21, 108

W

Warning/indicator lights
Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) 15
Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 209
Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 9
Warranty coverages 301
Washer fluid level (indicator light) 16
Washing matte finish paint 275
Weights 298
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 194
What happens to unbelted occupants? 191
What impairs driving safety? 181
Wheel bolts 269
Loosening 284
Removing the cover 284
Tightening specification 286
Wheels 255
Changing 286
Cleaning 276
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 257
Replacing 283
Tires and vehicle load limits 267
Wheel wrench 281
When must the airbag system be inspected? 209
Where are lower anchorages located? 236
Why safety belts? 190
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream 159
Audio player 159
Hotspot 130
Online media 160
Settings 130
also refer to Wi-Fi 159
Window regulator 32
Windows
Cleaning/removing ice 277
Defrosting 53
Window washer system
Reservoir capacity 299

8S0012721BB

Windshield
cleaning 41
Defrosting 53
also refer to Windshield 41
Windshield washer system 41, 253
Windshield wipers
Cleaning wiper blades 42
Folding up 42
Indicator light 16
Replacing windshield wiper blades 42
Switching on and off 41
Winter driving
Snow chains 270
Tires 270
Winter operation
Cooling system 250
Defrosting the windows 53
Vehicle battery 252
Windshield washer system 253
Winter tires 270
Winter use
Car washes 275
Removing ice from windows 277
Seat heating 53

X

Xenon headlights 36

Z

Zooming (map) 20, 137, 143

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This Owner's Manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 05.2016
8S0012721BB



8S0012721BB

www.audi.com